



Finance Act 1989

1989 CHAPTER 26

U.K.

An Act to grant certain duties, to alter other duties, and to amend the law relating to the National Debt and the Public Revenue, and to make further provision in connection with Finance. [27th July 1989]

^{xix2}Most Gracious Sovereign, WE, Your Majesty's most dutiful and loyal subjects, the Commons of the United Kingdom in Parliament assembled, towards raising the necessary supplies to defray Your Majesty's public expenses, and making an addition to the public revenue, have freely and voluntarily resolved to give and grant unto Your Majesty the several duties hereinafter mentioned; and do therefore most humbly beseech Your Majesty that it may be enacted, and be it enacted by the Queen's most Excellent Majesty, by and with the advice and consent of the Lords Spiritual and Temporal, and Commons, in this present Parliament assembled, and by the authority of the same, as follows:—

Editorial Information

XI The text of ss. 1-5, 8(2), 15-17, 28, 29, 187(1), 188, Sch. 17 Pt. I was taken from SIF Group 40:1 (Customs and Excise: Customs and Excise Duties), the text of ss. 18-27, 29, 186(2), 187(1), 188, Sch. 3, Sch. 17 Pt. III was taken from SIF Group 40:2 (Customs and Excise: Value added Tax and Car Tax), the text of ss. 30-90, 91(1)(3), 92(1)(2)(4)-(7), 93-95, 96(1)(2)(4), 97-121, 130, 138, 142-170, 178-180, 182, 186(1)(3), 187(1), 188, Schs. 4-13, Sch. 17 Pts IV-VI, VIII, X was taken from SIF Group 63:1 (Income, Corporation and Capital Gains Taxes: Income and Corporation Taxes), the text of ss. 91(2)(3), 92(3)-(7), 96(3), 107, 122-137, 139-141, 186(1)(3), 187, 188, Sch. 12 para. 6, Schs. 14, 15, Sch. 17 Pts. VII, XIV was taken from SIF Group 63:2 (Income, Corporation and Capital Gains Taxes: Capital Gains Tax), the text of ss. 138(6)-(12), 171, 172, 178, 179(1)(d)(e)(3)(4), 180(4)(7), 186(1)(3), 187(1), 188, Sch. 17 Pt. X was taken from SIF Group 65 (Inheritance Tax), the text of ss. 181, 187(1), 188, Sch. 16, Sch. 17 Pt. XI was taken from SIF Group 96 (Posts and Telecommunications), the text of ss. 185, 187, 188, Sch. 17 Pt. XIV was taken from SIF Group 98:5 (Property, England and Wales: Tithe), the text of ss. 183, 187, 188, Sch. 17 Pts. XII, XIV was taken from SIF Group 99:3 (Public Finance and Economic Controls: National Debt), the text of ss. 6, 7, 8(1), 9-14, 187(1), 188, Schs. 1, 2, Sch. 17 Pt. II was taken from SIF Group 107:2 (Road Traffic: Vehicle Excise Duty), the text of ss. 142(9)(10), 184, 187(1), 188, Sch. 17 Pt. XIII was taken from SIF Group 110 (Savings Banks) and the text of ss.

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

173-178, 179(1)(f)(4), 180(5)(7), 186(1), 187(1), 188, Sch.17 Pt. IX was taken from SIF Group 114 (Stamp Duty). This Act is presented basically in the form in which it appears in the 1990 Edition of The Taxes Acts edited by the Inland Revenue and published by HMSO (any references in commentary to volumes 1, 2, etc are to volumes of that edition). The style of editing differs from that applicable to most Acts published in Statutes in Force.

X2 General amendments to Tax Acts, Income Tax Acts, and/or Corporation Tax Acts made by legislation after 1.2.1991 are noted against [Income and Corporation Taxes Act 1988 \(c. 1, SIF 63:1\)](#) but not against each Act

Modifications etc. (not altering text)

C1 General amendments etc. to Tax Acts (or Income Tax Acts or Corporation Tax Acts as the case may be) made by [Taxes Management Act 1970 \(c. 9, SIF 63:1\)](#), [s. 41A\(7\)](#) (as added by [Finance Act 1990 \(c. 29, SIF 63:1\)](#), [s. 95\(1\)\(2\)](#)), [British Telecommunications Act 1981 \(c. 38, SIF 96\)](#), [s. 82\(2\)\(7\)](#); [Telecommunications Act 1984 \(c. 12, SIF 96\)](#), [s. 72\(3\)](#); [Finance Act 1984 \(c. 43, SIF 63:1\)](#), ss. 82(6), 85(2), 89(1)(7), 96(1)(7), 98(7), Sch. 9 para. 3(2)(9), Sch. 16 paras. 6, 12 and [Finance Act 1985 \(c. 54, SIF 63:1\)](#), ss. 72(1), 74(5), [Sch. 23 para. 15\(4\)](#), S.I. 1987/530, regs. 11(2), 13(1), 14, [Income and Corporation Taxes Act 1988 \(c. 1, SIF 63:1\)](#), [ss. 4, 6, 7, 9, 32, 34, 78, 134, 135, 141, 142, 185, 191, 193, 194, 195, 200, 203, 209, 212, 213, 219, 247, 253, 272, 287, 314, 315, 317, 318, 325, 326, 327, 345, 350, 351, 368, 375, 381, 397, 414, 432, 440, 442, 446, 458, 460, 461, 463, 463\(2\)\(3\)](#) (as added by [Finance Act 1990 \(c. 29, SIF 63:1\)](#), [s. 50\(2\)](#)), 468, 474, 475, 486, 490, 491, 503, 511, 518, 524, 532, 544, 550, 556, 558, 569, 572, 582, 595, 601, 613, 617, 619, 621, 639, 656, 660, 663, 676, 689, 691, 694, 700, 701, 714, 716, 739, 743, 754, 763, 776, 780, 781, 782, 787, 789, 811, 828, 829, 832, 833, 834, 835, 837, 838, 839, 840, 841, 842, Sch. 2 para. 5, Sch. 4 para. 5, Sch. 13 para. 10, Sch. 16 para. 10, Sch. 21 para. 6, Sch. 26 para. 1, Sch. 27 para. 20, [Finance Act 1988 \(c. 39, SIF 63:1\)](#), ss. 66, 127(1)(6), [Sch. 12 para. 6](#), [Capital Allowances Act 1990 \(c. 1, SIF 63:1\)](#), [ss. 28\(1\), 68\(8\), 74, 82, 83\(5\), 148\(5\), 163\(4\), 164\(2\)](#), S.I. 1990/627 and [Finance Act 1990 \(c. 29, SIF 63:1\)](#), [s. 25\(10\)](#)

PART I U.K.

CUSTOMS AND EXCISE, VALUE ADDED TAX AND CAR TAX

CHAPTER I U.K.

CUSTOMS AND EXCISE

Hydrocarbon oil duties

1 Rates. U.K.

- (1) F1
- (2) In section 13A of that Act (rebate on unleaded petrol), for “£0.0202” there shall be substituted “£0.0272”.
- (3) F1
- (4) This section shall be deemed to have come into force at 6 o'clock in the evening of 14th March 1989.

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

Textual Amendments

F1 S. 1(1)(3) repealed by Finance Act 1990 (c. 29, SIF 40:1), s. 132, Sch. 19 Pt. I Note

2 Reliefs. **U.K.**

(1) The following section shall be inserted after section 20A of the ^{M1}Hydrocarbon Oil Duties Act 1979—

“20AA Power to allow reliefs.

- (1) The Commissioners may make regulations allowing reliefs as regards—
- (a) any duty of excise which has been charged in respect of hydrocarbon oil, petrol substitute, spirits used for making power methylated spirits, or road fuel gas;
 - (b) any amount which has been paid to the Commissioners under section 12(2) above;
 - (c) any amount which would (apart from the regulations) be payable to the Commissioners under section 12(2) above.
- (2) The regulations may include such provision as the Commissioners think fit in connection with allowing reliefs, and in particular may—
- (a) provide for relief to take the form of a repayment or remission;
 - (b) provide for relief to be allowed in cases or classes of case set out in the regulations;
 - (c) provide for relief to be allowed to the extent set out in the regulations;
 - (d) provide for relief to be allowed subject to conditions imposed by the regulations;
 - (e) provide for relief to be allowed subject to such conditions as the Commissioners may impose on the person claiming relief;
 - (f) provide for the taking of samples of hydrocarbon oil in order to ascertain whether relief should be allowed or has been properly allowed;
 - (g) make provision as to administration (which may include provision requiring the making of applications for relief);
 - (h) make different provision in relation to different cases or classes of case;
 - (i) include such supplementary, incidental, consequential or transitional provisions as appear to the Commissioners to be necessary or expedient.
- (3) The conditions which may be imposed as mentioned in subsection (2)(d) or (e) above may include conditions as to the physical security of premises, the provision (by bond or otherwise) of security for payment, or such other matters as the Commissioners think fit.
- (4) Where a person contravenes or fails to comply with any regulation made under this section or any condition imposed by or under such a regulation—
- (a) he shall be liable on summary conviction to a penalty of three times the value of any goods in respect of which the contravention or failure

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- occurred or a penalty of an amount represented by level 3 on the standard scale, whichever is the greater, and
- (b) any goods in respect of which the contravention or failure occurred shall be liable to forfeiture.
- (5) A reference in this section to a duty of excise includes a reference to any addition to such duty by virtue of section 1 of the Excise Duties (Surcharges or Rebates) Act 1979.
- (6) Schedule 5 to this Act shall have effect with respect to any sample of hydrocarbon oil taken in pursuance of regulations made under this section.”
- (2) In consequence of subsection (1) above, in paragraph 6 of Schedule 5 to the ^{M2}Hydrocarbon Oil Duties Act 1979 after “section” there shall be inserted “20AA or”.

Marginal Citations

- M1** 1979c. 5.
M2 1979 c. 5.

Alcoholic liquor duties

F23 **Original gravity of beer.** **U.K.**

Textual Amendments

- F2** S. 3 repealed (1.6.1993) by Finance Act 1991 (c. 31, SIF 40:1), ss. 7, 123, **Sch. 19 Pt. II**; S.I. 1993/1152, art. 3, **Sch. 1** (with arts. 4-8)

4 **Blending made-wines etc.** **U.K.**

- (1) Section 55 of the Alcoholic Liquor Duties Act 1979 (charge of excise duty on made-wine) shall be amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (5) (which, where certain conditions are satisfied, lifts the requirement to hold a licence for premises where made-wine is produced), after paragraph (d) there shall be added “and
- (e) he does not blend or otherwise mix—
- (i) two or more made-wines, or
- (ii) one or more made-wines and one or more wines,
- so as to produce made-wine the rate of duty applicable to which is higher than the rate applicable to at least one of the constituent liquors. ”
- (3) After subsection (5) there shall be inserted—
- “(5A) For the purposes of subsection (5) above—

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) the rate of duty applicable to any made-wine is that which is or would be chargeable under subsection (1) above on its importation into the United Kingdom; and
 - (b) the rate of duty applicable to any wine is that which is or would be chargeable under subsection (1) of section 54 above on its importation into the United Kingdom.”
- (4) This section shall have effect in relation to the blending or other mixing of made-wines, or of made-wines and wines, on or after the day on which this Act is passed.

5 Description as beer. U.K.

Section 73 of the ^{M3}Alcoholic Liquor Duties Act 1979(which prohibits anyone from describing as beer any substance on which beer duty has not been paid) shall cease to have effect.

Marginal Citations

M3 1979 c. 4.

Vehicles excise duty

6 Rates. U.K.

- F3(1)
- F3(2)
- (3) **F4**
- F3(5)
- F5(6)
- F3(7)

Textual Amendments

- F3** S. 6(1)(2)(5)(7) repealed (1.9.1994) by 1994 c. 22, ss. 65, 66(1), **Sch. 5 Pt. I** (with s. 57(4))
- F4** S. 6(3)(4), Sch. 1 Pt. II, Sch. 2 para. 3 repealed by Finance Act 1990 (c. 29, SIF 58), s. 132, **Sch. 19 Pt. II** Note 3
- F5** S. 6(6) repealed (27.7.1993 with effect in relation to licences taken out after 16.3.1993) by 1993 c. 34, s. 213, **Sch. 23 Pt. I(6)**

F67 **U.K.**

Textual Amendments

- F6** S. 7 repealed (1.9.1994) by 1994 c. 22, ss. 65, 66(1), **Sch. 5 Pt. I** (with s. 57(4))

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

F78 **U.K.**

Textual Amendments
F7 S. 8 repealed (1.9.1994) by 1994 c. 22, ss. 65, 66(1), **Sch. 5 Pt. I** (with s. 57(4))

F89 **U.K.**

Textual Amendments
F8 S. 9 repealed (1.9.1994) by 1994 c. 22, ss. 65, 66(1), **Sch. 5 Pt. I** (with s. 57(4))

F910 **U.K.**

Textual Amendments
F9 S. 10 repealed (1.9.1994) by 1994 c. 22, ss. 65, 66(1), **Sch. 5 Pt. I** (with s. 57(4))

F1011 **U.K.**

Textual Amendments
F10 S. 11 repealed (1.9.1994) by 1994 c. 22, ss. 65, 66(1), **Sch. 5 Pt. I** (with s. 57(4))

F1112 **U.K.**

Textual Amendments
F11 S. 12 repealed (1.9.1994) by 1994 c. 22, ss. 65, 66(1), **Sch. 5 Pt. I** (with s. 57(4))

F1213 **U.K.**

Textual Amendments
F12 S. 13 repealed (1.9.1994) by 1994 c. 22, ss. 65, 66(1), **Sch. 5 Pt. I** (with s. 57(4))

14 Dishonoured cheques. U.K.

F13(1)

F14(2)

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- F13(3)
- F14(4)
- F13(5)
- F14(6)
- F13(7)

Textual Amendments

- F13 S. 14(1)(3)(5)(7) repealed (1.9.1994) by 1994 c. 22, ss. 65, 66(1), **Sch. 5 Pt. I** (with s. 57(4))
- F14 S. 14(2)(4)(6) repealed (1.10.1991) by Finance Act 1991 (c. 31, SIF 107:2), ss. 10, 123, **Sch. 19 Pt. IV**; S.I. 1991/2021, **art. 2**.

General

F15 **15** **U.K.**

Textual Amendments

- F15 S. 15 repealed (1.1.1995) by 1994 c. 9, s. 258, **Sch. 26 Pt. III**, note (with s. 19(3)); S.I. 1994/2679, **art. 3**

16 Time limits for proceedings. U.K.

(1) After section 146 of the Customs and Excise Management Act 1979 there shall be inserted—

“146A Time limit for proceedings.

- (1) Except as otherwise provided in the customs and excise Acts, and notwithstanding anything in any other enactment, the following provisions shall apply in relation to proceedings for an offence under those Acts.
- (2) Proceedings for an indictable offence shall not be commenced after the end of the period of 20 years beginning with the day on which the offence was committed.
- (3) Proceedings for a summary offence shall not be commenced after the end of the period of 3 years beginning with that day but, subject to that, may be commenced at any time within 6 months from the date on which sufficient evidence to warrant the proceedings came to the knowledge of the prosecuting authority.
- (4) For the purposes of subsection (3) above, a certificate of the prosecuting authority as to the date on which such evidence as is there mentioned came to that authority’s knowledge shall be conclusive evidence of that fact.
- (5) In the application of this section to Scotland—

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) in subsection (3), “proceedings for an indictable offence” means proceedings on indictment;
- (b) in subsection (3), “proceedings for a summary offence” means summary proceedings.

(6) In the application of this section to Northern Ireland—

- (a) “indictable offence” means an offence which, if committed by an adult, is punishable on conviction on indictment (whether only on conviction on indictment, or either on conviction on indictment or on summary conviction);
- (b) “summary offence” means an offence which, if committed by an adult, is punishable only on summary conviction.

(7) In this section, “prosecuting authority” means the Commissioners and includes, in Scotland, the procurator fiscal.”

(2) Section 147(1) of that Act shall cease to have effect.

^{F16}(3)

(4) This section shall have effect in relation to offences committed on or after the day on which this Act is passed.

Textual Amendments
F16 S. 16(3) repealed (1.9.1994) by 1994 c. 22, ss. 65, 66(1), Sch. 5 Pt. I (with s. 57(4))

17 Disbursements in Port of London. U.K.

In section 17 of the ^{M4}Customs and Excise Management Act 1979 (general rule that customs and excise receipts, after deduction of disbursements, are to be paid into the Commissioners’ General Account at the Bank of England) paragraph (a) of subsection (5) (special rule that disbursements in Port of London are to be paid out of that Account) shall cease to have effect.

Marginal Citations
M4 1979 c. 2.

CHAPTER II U.K.

VALUE ADDED TAX

Zero-rating etc.

^{F17}**18** **U.K.**

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

Textual Amendments

F17 S. 18 repealed (1.9.1994 with effect as mentioned in s. 101(1) of the amending Act) by 1994 c. 23, s. 100(2), **Sch. 15**

F18 **19** **U.K.**

Textual Amendments

F18 S. 19 repealed (1.9.1994 with effect as mentioned in s. 101(1) of the amending Act) by 1994 c. 23, s. 100(2), **Sch. 15**

F19 **20** **U.K.**

Textual Amendments

F19 S. 20 repealed (1.9.1994 with effect as mentioned in s. 101(1) of the amending Act) by 1994 c. 23, s. 100(2), **Sch. 15**

F20 **21** **U.K.**

Textual Amendments

F20 S. 21 repealed (1.9.1994 with effect as mentioned in s. 101(1) of the amending Act) by 1994 c. 23, s. 100(2), **Sch. 15**

F21 **22** **U.K.**

Textual Amendments

F21 S. 22 repealed (1.9.1994 with effect as mentioned in s. 101(1) of the amending Act) by 1994 c. 23, s. 100(2), **Sch. 15**

F22 **23** **U.K.**

Textual Amendments

F22 S. 23 repealed (1.9.1994 with effect as mentioned in s. 101(1) of the amending Act) by 1994 c. 23, s. 100(2), **Sch. 15**

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

Other provisions

F23 **24** **U.K.**

Textual Amendments

F23 S. 24 repealed (1.9.1994 with effect as mentioned in s. 101(1) of the amending Act) by 1994 c. 23, s. 100(2), Sch. 15

F24 **25** **U.K.**

Textual Amendments

F24 S. 25 repealed (1.9.1994 with effect as mentioned in s. 101(1) of the amending Act) by 1994 c. 23, s. 100(2), Sch. 15

F25 **26** **U.K.**

Textual Amendments

F25 S. 26 repealed (1.9.1994 with effect as mentioned in s. 101(1) of the amending Act) by 1994 c. 23, s. 100(2), Sch. 15

CHAPTER III **U.K.**

MISCELLANEOUS

27 **Relief from car tax where vehicle leased to the handicapped.** **U.K.**

(1) After section 5 of the ^{M5}Car Tax Act 1983 there shall be inserted the following section—

“5A Relief where vehicle leased to the handicapped.

- (1) This section applies where on the date when, apart from subsection (2) (a) below, tax on a chargeable vehicle would become due from a person registered under this Act, there is held by him or on his behalf a certificate of a person to whom the vehicle is sold (“the lessor”) that the lessor intends to supply the vehicle to another in such circumstances that the supply will be a zero-rated supply by virtue of item 12 of Group 14 (letting on hire of motor vehicles to the handicapped) of Schedule 5 to the Value Added Tax Act 1983.
- (2) Tax on the vehicle—
- (a) shall not be payable by the registered person, but

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (b) if, within the period of three years beginning with that date, the lessor supplies the vehicle in any circumstances other than those mentioned in subsection (1) above, shall be payable by the lessor and shall become due and payable at the time of the supply.
- (3) In this section—
“certificate” means a certificate in a form for the time being approved by the Commissioners, and
“supply” has the same meaning as in the Value Added Tax Act 1983.”
- (2) In section 5 of the Car Tax Act 1983 (liability and payment), in subsection (1), at the end of paragraph (a), there shall be inserted the words “subject to section 5A below”.
- (3) The powers conferred by Schedule 1 to that Act to require accounts and records to be preserved and produced shall be exercisable also in relation to any certificate which has been held by or on behalf of a registered person for the purposes of section 5A of that Act.
- (4) In paragraph 13 of that Schedule (restriction on registration of chargeable vehicles), after sub-paragraph (c) there shall be inserted “or
(d) that, by virtue of section 5A of this Act, tax on it has not become due and payable.”

Marginal Citations

M5 1983 c. 53.

28 Reliefs from duties and taxes for persons enjoying certain immunities and privileges. **U.K.**

- (1) After section 13 of the ^{M6} Customs and Excise Duties (General Reliefs) Act 1979 there shall be inserted the following sections—

“13A Reliefs from duties and taxes for persons enjoying certain immunities and privileges.

- (1) The Commissioners may by order make provision for conferring in respect of any persons to whom this section applies reliefs, by way of remission or repayment, from payment by them or others of duties of customs or excise, value added tax or car tax.
- (2) An order under this section may make any relief for which it provides subject to such conditions binding the person in respect of whom the relief is conferred and, if different, the person liable apart from the relief for payment of the tax or duty (including conditions which are to be complied with after the time when, apart from the relief, the duty or tax would become payable) as may be imposed by or under the order.
- (3) An order under this section may include any of the provisions mentioned in subsection (4) below for cases where—
(a) relief from payment of any duty of customs or excise, value added tax or car tax chargeable on any goods, or on the supply of any goods or

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- services or the importation of any goods has been conferred (whether by virtue of an order under this section or otherwise) in respect of any person to whom this section applies, and
- (b) in the case of goods, provision for forfeiture of the goods.
- (4) The provisions referred to in subsection (3) above are—
- (a) provision for payment to the Commissioners of the tax or duty by—
- (i) the person liable, apart from the relief, for its payment, or
- (ii) any person bound by the condition, or
- (iii) any person who is or has been in possession of the goods or has received the benefit of the services,
- or for two or more of those persons to be jointly and severally liable for such payment, and
- (5) An order under this section—
- (a) may contain such incidental and supplementary provisions as the Commissioners think necessary or expedient, and
- (b) may make different provision for different cases.
- (6) In this section and section 13C of this Act—
- “duty of customs” includes any agricultural levy within the meaning of section 6 of the European Communities Act 1972 chargeable on goods imported into the United Kingdom, and
- “duty of excise” means any duty of excise chargeable on goods and includes any addition to excise duty by virtue of section 1 of the Excise Duties (Surcharges or Rebates) Act 1979.
- (7) For the purposes of this section and section 13C of this Act, where in respect of any person to whom this section applies relief is conferred (whether by virtue of an order under this section or otherwise) in relation to the use of goods by any persons or for any purposes, the relief is to be treated as conferred subject to a condition binding on him that the goods will be used only by those persons or for those purposes.
- (8) Nothing in any order under this section shall be construed as authorising a person to import any thing in contravention of any prohibition or restriction for the time being in force with respect to it under or by virtue of any enactment.

13B Persons to whom section 13A applies.

- (1) The persons to whom section 13A of this act applies are—
- (a) any person who, for the purposes of any provision of the Visiting Forces Act 1952 or the International Headquarters and Defence Organisations Act 1964 is—
- (i) a member of a visiting force or of a civilian component of such a force or a dependant of such a member, or
- (ii) a headquarters, a member of a headquarters or a dependant of such a member,
- (b) any person enjoying any privileges or immunities under or by virtue of—
- (i) the Diplomatic Privileges Act 1964,

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (ii) the Commonwealth Secretariat Act 1966,
 - (iii) the Consular Relations Act 1968,
 - (iv) the International Organisations Act 1968, or
 - (v) the Overseas Development and Co-operation Act 1980,
- (c) any person enjoying, under or by virtue of section 2 of the European Communities Act 1972, any privileges or immunities similar to those enjoyed under or by virtue of the enactments referred to in paragraph (b) above.
- (2) The Secretary of State may by order amend subsection (1) above to include any persons enjoying any privileges or immunities similar to those enjoyed under or by virtue of the enactments referred to in paragraph (b) of that subsection.
- (3) No order shall be made under this section unless a draft of the order has been laid before and approved by resolution of each House of Parliament.

13C Offence where relieved goods used, etc., in breach of condition.

- (1) Subsection (2) below applies where—
- (a) any relief from payment of any duty of customs or excise, value added tax or car tax chargeable on, or on the supply or importation of, any goods has been conferred (whether by virtue of an order under section 13A of this Act or otherwise) in respect of any person to whom that section applies subject to any condition as to the persons by whom or the purposes for which the goods may be used, and
 - (b) if the tax or duty has subsequently become payable, it has not been paid.
- (2) If any person—
- (a) acquires the goods for his own use, where he is not permitted by the condition to use them, or for use for a purpose that is not permitted by the condition or uses them for such a purpose, or
 - (b) acquires the goods for use, or causes or permits them to be used, by a person not permitted by the condition to use them or by a person for a purpose that is not permitted by the condition or disposes of them to a person not permitted by the condition to use them,
- with intent to evade payment of any tax or duty that has become payable or that, by reason of the disposal, acquisition or use, becomes or will become payable, he is guilty of an offence.
- (3) For the purposes of this section—
- (a) in the case of a condition as to the persons by whom goods may be used, a person is not permitted by the condition to use them unless he is a person referred to in the condition as permitted to use them, and
 - (b) in relation to a condition as to the purposes for which goods may be used, a purpose is not permitted by the condition unless it is a purpose referred to in the condition as a permitted purpose,
- and in this section “dispose” includes “lend” and “let on hire”, and “acquire” shall be interpreted accordingly.

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (4) A person guilty of an offence under this section may be detained and shall be liable—
- (a) on summary conviction, to a penalty of the statutory maximum or of three times the value of the goods (whichever is the greater), or to imprisonment for a term not exceeding six months, or to both, or
 - (b) on conviction on indictment, to a penalty of any amount, or to imprisonment for a term not exceeding seven years, or to both.”
- (2) Section 13C of the ^{M7} Customs and Excise Duties (General Reliefs) Act 1979 inserted by subsection (1) above shall have effect where relief is conferred on or after the day on which this Act is passed.
- (3) In section 17 of the Customs and Excise Duties (General Reliefs) Act 1979, in subsection (3), for “or 13” there shall be substituted “13 or 13A” and, in subsection (4), for “or 13(1)” there shall be substituted “13(1) or 13A”.

Marginal Citations

- M6** 1979 c. 3.
M7 1979 c. 3.

[^{F26}29 Recovery of overpaid excise duty and car tax. **U.K.**

- (1) This section applies to proceedings for restitution of an amount paid to the Commissioners of Customs and Excise by way of excise duty or car tax.
- (2) Proceedings to which this section applies shall not be dismissed by reason only of the fact that the amount was paid by reason of a mistake of law.
- (3) In any proceedings to which this section applies it shall be a defence that repayment of an amount would unjustly enrich the claimant.
- (4) This section shall have effect in relation to proceedings commenced on or after the day on which this Act is passed.]

Textual Amendments

- F26** S. 29 ceases to have effect (1.12.1995 with effect as mentioned in s. 20(5) of the amending Act) by 1995 c. 4, s. 20(3); S.I. 1995/2892, art. 2

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

PART II U.K.

INCOME TAX, CORPORATION TAX AND CAPITAL GAINS TAX

CHAPTER I U.K.

GENERAL

Income tax rates and allowances

30 Charge and rates of income tax for 1989-90. U.K.

- (1) Income tax shall be charged for the year 1989-90, and the basic rate of tax shall be 25 per cent.
- (2) The higher rate at which income tax is charged for the year 1989-90 in respect of so much of an individual's total income as exceeds the basic rate limit (20,700) shall be 40 per cent.

Modifications etc. (not altering text)

C2 For earlier years see Table C, Vol. 1

31 Age allowance. U.K.

- (1) In section 257 of the Taxes Act 1988—
 - (a) in subsection (3) (increased allowance for those aged 80 and over) for “80”, wherever occurring, there shall be substituted “75”, and
 - (b) in subsection (5) (age allowance withdrawn by two-thirds of amount by which income exceeds a specified limit) for “two-thirds” there shall be substituted “one half”.
- (2) This section shall have effect for the year 1989-90.

Modifications etc. (not altering text)

C3 For earlier years see Table E(1), Vol. 1

32 Operative date for PAYE. U.K.

For the year 1989-90, sections 1(5) and 257(10) of the Taxes Act 1988 (which specify the date from which indexed changes in the basic rate limit and in allowances are to be brought into account for the purposes of PAYE) shall have effect as if for the reference to 5th May there were substituted a reference to 18th May.

33 Married couples. U.K.

- (1) Sections 257 to 257F and 265 of the ^{M8}Taxes Act 1988, as inserted for the year 1990-91 and subsequent years by the Finance Act 1988, shall be amended as follows.

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (2) In section 257(1) for “£2,605” there shall be substituted “£2,785”.
- (3) In section 257(2) for “£3,180” there shall be substituted “£3,400”.
- (4) In section 257(3)—
- (a) for “80” there shall be substituted “75”, and
 - (b) for “£3,310” there shall be substituted “£3,540”.
- (5) In section 257(5)—
- (a) for “£10,600” there shall be substituted “£11,400”, and
 - (b) for “two-thirds” there shall be substituted “one half”.
- [^{F27}(6) In section 257A(1) for “£1,490” there shall be substituted “£1,590”.]
- (7) In section 257A(2) for “£1,855” there shall be substituted “£1,985”.
- (8) In section 257A(3)—
- (a) for “80” there shall be substituted “75”, and
 - (b) for “£1,895” there shall be substituted “£2,025”.
- (9) In section 257A(5)—
- (a) for “£10,600” there shall be substituted “£11,400”, and
 - (b) for “two-thirds” there shall be substituted “one half”.
- (10) In sections ^{F28} . . . [^{F29}257D(8) and] 265(3) after paragraph (b) there shall be inserted “or
(c) on account of any payments to which section 593(2) or 639(3) applies.”.
- [^{F30}(11) In section 257E(1)(b) for “80” there shall be substituted “75”.
- ^{F30}(12) In section 257E(2)(a) for “£3,180” there shall be substituted “£3,400”.
- ^{F30}(13) In section 257E(2)(b) for “£3,310” there shall be substituted “£3,540”.]

Textual Amendments

- F27** S. 33(6) repealed (27.7.1999 with effect for the year 2000-2001 and subsequent years of assessment) by 1999 c. 16, s. 139, **Sch. 20 Pt. III(3)**, note 2
- F28** Words in s. 33(10) repealed (16.7.1992) by virtue of **Finance (No. 2) Act 1992 (c. 48)**, ss. 20, 82, **Sch. 5 para. 10, Sch. 18 Pt. VII(1)**
- F29** Words in s. 33(10) repealed (27.7.1999 with effect for the year 2000-2001 and subsequent years of assessment) by virtue of 1999 c. 16, s. 139, **Sch. 20 Pt. III(3)**, note 2
- F30** S. 33(11)-(13) repealed (27.7.1999 with effect for the year 2000-2001 and subsequent years of assessment) by 1999 c. 16, s. 139, **Sch. 20 Pt. III(3)**, note 2

Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C4** See **Income and Corporation Taxes Act 1988 (c. 1, SIF 63:1)**, s. 257 for 1989–1990 and see **Income and Corporation Taxes Act 1988 (c. 1, SIF 63:1)**, 257–257E for 1990–1991

Marginal Citations

- M8** 1988 c. 39.

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

Corporation tax rates etc.

34 Charge and rate of corporation tax for financial year 1989. U.K.

Corporation tax shall be charged for the financial year 1989 at the rate of 35 per cent.

Modifications etc. (not altering text)

C5 For earlier years see Table K, Vol. 1

35 Corporation tax: small companies. U.K.

- (1) For the financial year 1989—
 - (a) the small companies' rate shall be 25 per cent., and
 - (b) the fraction mentioned in section 13(2) of the Taxes Act 1988 (marginal relief for small companies) shall be one fortieth.
- (2) In section 13(3) of that Act (limits of marginal relief), in paragraphs (a) and (b)—
 - (a) for “£100,000” there shall be substituted “£150,000”, and
 - (b) for “£500,000” there shall be substituted “£750,000”.
- (3) Subsection (2) above shall have effect for the financial year 1989 and subsequent financial years; and where by virtue of that subsection section 13 of the Taxes Act 1988 has effect with different relevant maximum amounts in relation to different parts of a company's accounting period, then for the purposes of that section those parts shall be treated as if they were separate accounting periods and the profits and basic profits of the company for that period shall be apportioned between those parts.

Modifications etc. (not altering text)

C6 For earlier years see Table K, Vol. 1

C7 For earlier years see Table L, Vol. 1

Receipts basis etc.

36 Schedule E: revised Cases. U.K.

- (1) The Taxes Act 1988 shall be amended as follows.
- (2) In paragraph 1 of section 19(1) the following Cases shall be substituted for Cases I, II and III—

“Case I: any emoluments for any year of assessment in which the person holding the office or employment is resident and ordinarily resident in the United Kingdom, subject however to section 192 if the emoluments are foreign emoluments (within the meaning of that section) and to section 193(1) if in the year of assessment concerned he performs the duties of the office or employment wholly or partly outside the United Kingdom;

Case II: any emoluments, in respect of duties performed in the United Kingdom, for any year of assessment in which the person holding the office

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

or employment is not resident (or, if resident, not ordinarily resident) in the United Kingdom, subject however to section 192 if the emoluments are foreign emoluments (within the meaning of that section);

Case III: any emoluments for any year of assessment in which the person holding the office or employment is resident in the United Kingdom (whether or not ordinarily resident there) so far as the emoluments are received in the United Kingdom;”.

(3) The following paragraph shall be inserted after paragraph 4 of section 19(1)—

Where (apart from this paragraph) emoluments from an office or employment would be for a year of assessment in which a person does not hold the office or employment, the following rules shall apply for the purposes of the Cases set out in paragraph 1 above—

- (a) if in the year concerned the office or employment has never been held, the emoluments shall be treated as emoluments for the first year of assessment in which the office or employment is held;
- (b) if in the year concerned the office or employment is no longer held, the emoluments shall be treated as emoluments for the last year of assessment in which the office or employment was held.”

(4) Subsection (2) above shall apply where the year of assessment mentioned in the substituted Case I, II or III is 1989-90 or a subsequent year of assessment.

(5) Subsection (3) above shall apply where each of the years mentioned in the new paragraph 4A(a) or (b) (as the case may be) is 1989-90 or a subsequent year of assessment.

37 **Schedule E: assessment on receipts basis. U.K.**

(1) The following sections shall be inserted immediately before section 203 of the Taxes Act 1988—

“202A Assessment on receipts basis.

(1) As regards any particular year of assessment—

- (a) income tax shall be charged under Cases I and II of Schedule E on the full amount of the emoluments received in the year in respect of the office or employment concerned;
- (b) income tax shall be charged under Case III of Schedule E on the full amount of the emoluments received in the United Kingdom in the year in respect of the office or employment concerned.

(2) Subsection (1) above applies—

- (a) whether the emoluments are for that year or for some other year of assessment;
- (b) whether or not the office or employment concerned is held at the time the emoluments are received or (as the case may be) received in the United Kingdom.

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (3) Where subsection (1) above applies in the case of emoluments received, or (as the case may be) received in the United Kingdom, after the death of the person who held the office or employment concerned, the charge shall be a charge on his executors or administrators; and accordingly income tax—
 - (a) shall be assessed and charged on the executors or administrators, and
 - (b) shall be a debt due from and payable out of the deceased's estate.
- (4) Section 202B shall have effect for the purposes of subsection (1)(a) above.

202B Receipts basis: meaning of receipt.

- (1) For the purposes of section 202A(1)(a) emoluments shall be treated as received at the time found in accordance with the following rules (taking the earlier or earliest time in a case where more than one rule applies)—
 - (a) the time when payment is made of or on account of the emoluments;
 - (b) the time when a person becomes entitled to payment of or on account of the emoluments;
 - (c) in a case where the emoluments are from an office or employment with a company, the holder of the office or employment is a director of the company and sums on account of the emoluments are credited in the company's accounts or records, the time when sums on account of the emoluments are so credited;
 - (d) in a case where the emoluments are from an office or employment with a company, the holder of the office or employment is a director of the company and the amount of the emoluments for a period is determined before the period ends, the time when the period ends;
 - (e) in a case where the emoluments are from an office or employment with a company, the holder of the office or employment is a director of the company and the amount of the emoluments for a period is not known until the amount is determined after the period has ended, the time when the amount is determined.
- (2) Subsection (1)(c), (d) or (e) above applies whether or not the office or employment concerned is that of director.
- (3) Paragraph (c), (d) or (e) of subsection (1) above applies if the holder of the office or employment is a director of the company at any time in the year of assessment in which the time mentioned in the paragraph concerned falls.
- (4) For the purposes of the rule in subsection (1)(c) above, any fetter on the right to draw the sums is to be disregarded.
- (5) In subsection (1) above "director" means—
 - (a) in relation to a company whose affairs are managed by a board of directors or similar body, a member of that board or similar body,
 - (b) in relation to a company whose affairs are managed by a single director or similar person, that director or person, and
 - (c) in relation to a company whose affairs are managed by the members themselves, a member of the company.
- (6) In subsection (1) above "director", in relation to a company, also includes any person in accordance with whose directions or instructions the company's

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

directors (as defined in subsection (5) above) are accustomed to act; and for this purpose a person is not to be deemed to be a person in accordance with whose directions or instructions the company's directors are accustomed to act by reason only that the directors act on advice given by him in a professional capacity.

(7) Subsections (1) to (6) above shall have effect subject to subsections (8) to (11) below.

(8) In a case where section 141(1)(a), 142(1)(a), 143(1)(a) or 148(4) treats a person as receiving or being paid an emolument or emoluments at a particular time, for the purposes of section 202A(1)(a) the emolument or emoluments shall be treated as received at that time; and in such a case subsections (1) to (6) above shall not apply.

(9) In a case where section 145(1) treats a person as receiving emoluments, for the purposes of section 202A(1)(a) the emoluments shall be treated as received in the period referred to in section 145(1); and in such a case subsections (1) to (6) above shall not apply.

(10) In a case where section 154(1), 157(1), 158(1), 160(1), 160(2), 162(6) or 164(1) treats an amount as emoluments, for the purposes of section 202A(1)(a) the emoluments shall be treated as received in the year referred to in section 154(1) or the other provision concerned; and in such a case subsections (1) to (6) above shall not apply.

(11) In a case where—

- (a) emoluments take the form of a benefit not consisting of money, and
- (b) subsection (8), (9) or (10) above does not apply,

for the purposes of section 202A(1)(a) the emoluments shall be treated as received at the time when the benefit is provided; and in such a case subsections (1) to (6) above shall not apply.”

(2) This section shall apply where the year of assessment mentioned in the new section 202A(1) is 1989-90 or a subsequent year of assessment even if the emoluments concerned are for a year of assessment before 1989-90.

(3) This section shall not apply in the case of emoluments of an office or employment held by a person who died before 6th April 1989.

38 **Schedule E: unpaid emoluments. U.K.**

(1) This section applies to emoluments of an office or employment if—

- (a) they are emoluments for a year of assessment (a relevant year) before 1989-90,
- (b) they fall within Case I or II of Schedule E as the Case applies for years before 1989-90,
- (c) they have not been paid before 6th April 1989, and
- (d) they have been received on or after 6th April 1989 and before 6th April 1991;

and section 202B of the Taxes Act 1988 shall apply for the purposes of paragraph (d) above as it applies for the purposes of section 202A(1)(a) of that Act.

(2) The emoluments shall be charged to income tax only by reference to the year of assessment in which they are received.

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (3) Any adjustments consequential on this section (such as the amendment of assessments or the repayment or setting-off of tax paid) shall be made.
- (4) This section shall not apply to emoluments of an office or employment held by a person who died before 6th April 1989.
- (5) This section shall not apply if the only emoluments of the office or employment not paid before 6th April 1989 are emoluments for a period consisting of or falling within the period beginning with 5th March 1989 and ending with 5th April 1989.
- (6) This section shall not apply unless—
 - (a) written notice that it is to apply is given to the inspector before 6th April 1991,
 - (b) the notice is given by or on behalf of the person who holds or held the office or employment concerned, and
 - (c) the notice states the amount of the emoluments falling within subsection(1) above.
- (7) Subsection (8) below applies where emoluments of an office or employment have been or fall to be computed by reference to the accounts basis as regards the year 1987-88 or years of assessment including that year.
- (8) In deciding for the purposes of subsection (1)(a) above whether emoluments are emoluments for a particular year, the emoluments of the office or employment for the year or (as the case may be) years mentioned in subsection(7) above, and for the year 1988-89, shall be computed by reference to that basis.
- (9) In deciding whether subsection (8) above applies in a particular case, any request to revoke the application of the accounts basis shall be ignored if—
 - (a) it is made after 5th April 1989, or
 - (b) it is made before 6th April 1989 otherwise than in writing.
- (10) In the application of this section to emoluments of an office or employment under or with a person carrying on business as an authorised Lloyd’s underwriting agent, the references in subsections (1)(d) and (6)(a) above to 6th April 1991 shall be construed as references to 6th April 1994.
- (11) Subsection (10) above shall not apply unless the duties of the office or employment relate wholly or mainly to the underwriting agency business.
- (12) The reference in subsection (10) above to an authorised Lloyd’s underwriting agent is to a person permitted by the Council of Lloyd’s to act as an underwriting agent at Lloyd’s.
- (13) If in a particular case it appears to the Board reasonable to do so they may direct that subsections (1)(d) and (6)(a) above shall have effect in relation to that case as if for the references to 6th April 1991 or (as the case may be) 6th April 1994 there were substituted references to such later date as they may specify in the direction.
- (14) In this section “the accounts basis” means the basis commonly so called (under which emoluments for a year of assessment are computed by reference to the emoluments for a period other than the year of assessment).

39 **Schedule E: unremitted emoluments.** **U.K.**

- (1) This section applies to emoluments of an office or employment if—

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) they are emoluments for a year of assessment (a relevant year) before 1989-90,
 - (b) they are received in the United Kingdom after 5th April 1989, and
 - (c) had this Act not been passed they would have fallen within Case III of Schedule E.
- (2) The emoluments shall be treated as if they were not emoluments for the relevant year.
- (3) But they shall be treated as if they were emoluments for the year of assessment in which they are received in the United Kingdom and as if they fell within Case III as substituted by section 36 above; and accordingly income tax shall be charged, in accordance with section 202A of the Taxes Act 1988, by reference to the year of assessment in which the emoluments are received in the United Kingdom.

40 Schedule E: emoluments already paid. U.K.

- (1) Subsection (2) below applies to emoluments of an office or employment if—
- (a) they are emoluments for a year of assessment after 1988-89,
 - (b) they have been paid before 6th April 1989, and
 - (c) they fall within Case I or II of Schedule E as substituted by section 36 above.
- (2) The emoluments shall be treated as if they were received, within the meaning of section 202B of the Taxes Act 1988, on 6th April 1989; and accordingly income tax shall be charged, in accordance with section 202A of that Act, by reference to the year 1989-90.
- (3) Subsection (4) below applies to emoluments of an office or employment if—
- (a) they are emoluments for a year of assessment after 1988-89,
 - (b) they have been received in the United Kingdom before 6th April 1989, and
 - (c) they fall within Case III of Schedule E as substituted by section 36 above.
- (4) The emoluments shall be treated as if they were received in the United Kingdom on 6th April 1989; and accordingly income tax shall be charged, in accordance with section 202A of the Taxes Act 1988, by reference to the year 1989-90.

41 Schedule E: pensions etc. U.K.

- (1) This section applies in relation to the following pensions and other benefits—
- (a) a pension, stipend or annuity chargeable to income tax under Schedule E by virtue of paragraph 2, 3 or 4 of section 19(1) of the Taxes Act 1988;
 - (b) a pension or annual payment chargeable to income tax under Schedule E by virtue of section 133 of that Act (voluntary pensions);
 - (c) income support chargeable to income tax under Schedule E by virtue of section 151 of that Act;
 - (d) a pension chargeable to income tax under Schedule E by virtue of section 597 of that Act (retirement benefit schemes);
 - (e) a benefit chargeable to income tax under Schedule E by virtue of section 617(1) of that Act (social security benefits).
- (2) As regards any particular year of assessment income tax shall be charged on the amount of the pension or other benefit accruing in respect of the year; and this shall apply irrespective of when any amount is actually paid in respect of the pension or other benefit.

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (3) This section shall apply where the year of assessment mentioned in subsection (2) above is 1989-90 or a subsequent year of assessment.

Modifications etc. (not altering text)

C8 S. 41 extended (3.5.1994) by 1994 c. 9, s. 139(3)

42 Schedule E: supplementary. U.K.

- (1) The Taxes Act 1988 shall be amended as follows.
- (2) In section 131(2) (interaction of Cases) the words “for the same or another chargeable period” shall be omitted.
- (3) In section 149(1) (sick pay chargeable as emoluments of employment for a certain period) the words “for that period” and the words “for that or any other period” shall be omitted.
- [^{F31}(4) Section 170 (profit-related pay charged for year of assessment in which it is paid) shall cease to have effect.]
- (5) In paragraph 2(2) of Schedule 12 (foreign earnings) for the words from “emoluments from” to “year of assessment” there shall be substituted the words “emoluments for the year of assessment from the relevant employment in respect of which such a deduction is allowed”.
- (6) This section shall apply for the year 1989-90 and subsequent years of assessment.

Textual Amendments

F31 S. 42(4) repealed (19.3.1997 with effect as mentioned in Sch. 18 Pt. VI(3), notes 1, 2 of the amending Act) by 1997 c. 16, ss. 61(2)(3), 113, Sch. 18 Pt. VI(3)

43 Schedule D: computation. U.K.

- (1) Subsection (2) below applies where—
- (a) a calculation is made of profits or gains which are to be charged under Schedule D and are for a period of account ending after 5th April 1989,
- (b) relevant emoluments would (apart from that subsection) be deducted in making the calculation, and
- (c) the emoluments are not paid before the end of the period of nine months beginning with the end of that period of account.
- (2) The emoluments—
- (a) shall not be deducted in making the calculation mentioned in subsection(1) (a) above, but
- (b) shall be deducted in calculating profits or gains which are to be charged under Schedule D and are for the period of account in which the emoluments are paid.
- (3) Subsections (4) and (5) below apply where—

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) a calculation such as is mentioned in subsection (1)(a) above is made,
 - (b) the calculation is made before the end of the period of nine months beginning with the end of the period of account concerned,
 - (c) relevant emoluments would (apart from subsection (2) above) be deducted in making the calculation, and
 - (d) the emoluments have not been paid when the calculation is made.
- (4) It shall be assumed for the purpose of making the calculation that the emoluments will not be paid before the end of that period of nine months.
- (5) But the calculation shall be adjusted if—
- (a) the emoluments are paid after the calculation is made but before the end of that period of nine months,
 - (b) a claim to adjust the calculation is made to the inspector, and
 - (c) the claim is made before the end of the period of two years beginning with the end of the period of account concerned.
- ^{F32}(6)
- ^{F32}(7)
- (8) In a case where the period of account mentioned in subsection (1)(a) above begins before 6th April 1989 and ends before 6th April 1990, the references in subsections (1)(c), (3)(b), (4) and (5)(a) above to nine months shall be construed as references to eighteen months.
- (9) In this section “period of account” means a period for which an account is made up.
- (10) For the purposes of this section “relevant emoluments” are emoluments for a period after 5th April 1989 allocated either—
- (a) in respect of particular offices or employments (or both), or
 - (b) generally in respect of offices or employments (or both).
- (11) This section applies in relation to potential emoluments as it applies in relation to relevant emoluments, and for this purpose—
- (a) potential emoluments are amounts or benefits reserved in the accounts of an employer, or held by an intermediary, with a view to their becoming relevant emoluments;
 - (b) potential emoluments are paid when they become relevant emoluments which are paid.
- (12) In deciding for the purposes of this section whether emoluments are paid at any time after 5th April 1989, section 202B of the Taxes Act 1988 (time when emoluments are treated as received) shall apply as it applies for the purposes of section 202A(1)(a) of that Act, but reading “paid” for “received” throughout.
- (13) In section 436(1)(b) of the Taxes Act 1988 (profits to be computed in accordance with provisions of that Act applicable to Case I of Schedule D) the reference to that Act shall be deemed to include a reference to this section.

Textual Amendments

F32 S. 43(6)(7) repealed (27.7.1993 with effect in relation to periods of account ending on or after 30.6.1993) by 1993 c. 34, ss. 181, 184(3), 213, **Sch. 23 Pt. III(12)** Note 3

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C9** S. 43 applied (31.7.1998 with effect as mentioned in s. 38(2)(3) of 1998 c. 36) by 1988 c. 1, s. 21A(2) (as substituted by 1998 c. 36, s. 38(1), Sch. 5 Pt. I paras. 4, 73)
S. 43 excluded (31.7.1998) by 1998 c. 36, s. 38, Sch. 5 Pt. IV paras. 66(2), 69

44 Investment and insurance companies: computation. U.K.

- (1) Subsection (2) below applies where—
- a calculation is made for the purposes of corporation tax of the profits of an investment company for an accounting period ending after 5th April 1989,
 - relevant emoluments would (apart from that subsection) be deducted in making the calculation, and
 - the emoluments are not paid before the end of the period of nine months beginning with the end of the relevant period of account.
- (2) The emoluments—
- shall not be deducted in making the calculation mentioned in subsection(1) (a) above, but
 - shall be deducted in calculating for the purposes of corporation tax the profits of the company concerned for the accounting period in which the emoluments are paid.
- (3) Subsections (4) and (5) below apply where—
- a calculation such as is mentioned in subsection (1)(a) above is made,
 - the calculation is made before the end of the period of nine months beginning with the end of the relevant period of account,
 - relevant emoluments would (apart from subsection (2) above) be deducted in making the calculation, and
 - the emoluments have not been paid when the calculation is made.
- (4) It shall be assumed for the purpose of making the calculation that the emoluments will not be paid before the end of that period of nine months.
- (5) But the calculation shall be adjusted if—
- the emoluments are paid after the calculation is made but before the end of that period of nine months,
 - a claim to adjust the calculation is made to the inspector by or on behalf of the company concerned, and
 - the claim is made before the end of the period of two years beginning with the end of the period of account concerned.
- (6) In a case where the accounting period mentioned in subsection (1)(a) above begins before 6th April 1989 and ends before 6th April 1990, the references in subsections (1)(c), (3)(b), (4) and (5)(a) above to nine months shall be construed as references to eighteen months.
- (7) In this section “investment company” has the same meaning as in Part IV of the Taxes Act 1988.
- (8) For the purposes of this section “relevant emoluments” are emoluments for a period after 5th April 1989 allocated either—
- in respect of particular offices or employments (or both), or

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (b) generally in respect of offices or employments (or both).
- (9) This section applies in relation to potential emoluments as it applies in relation to relevant emoluments, and for this purpose—
 - (a) potential emoluments are amounts or benefits reserved in the accounts of an employer, or held by an intermediary, with a view to their becoming relevant emoluments;
 - (b) potential emoluments are paid when they become relevant emoluments which are paid.
- (10) For the purpose of this section the relevant period of account is the period of account which—
 - (a) includes the accounting period concerned, or
 - (b) begins when the accounting period concerned begins and ends when the accounting period concerned ends.
- (11) In deciding for the purposes of this section whether emoluments are paid at any time after 5th April 1989, section 202B of the Taxes Act 1988 (time when emoluments are treated as received) shall apply as it applies for the purposes of section 202A(1)(a) of that Act, but reading “paid” for “received” throughout.
- (12) Where the profits of a company carrying on life assurance business are not charged under Case I of Schedule D, this section shall apply in calculating the profits as it applies in calculating the profits of an investment company; but the effect of section 86 below shall be ignored in construing subsection(1)(b) above.
- (13) In a case where, apart from this subsection and by virtue of subsection(2)(b) above as it applies by virtue of subsection (12) above, emoluments fall to be deducted in calculating profits for a particular accounting period—
 - (a) subsection (2)(b) above shall have effect subject to section 86 below;
 - (b) in construing section 86 the emoluments shall be treated as expenses for that accounting period.

Modifications etc. (not altering text)

C10 S. 44 modified (23.3.1999 with effect with respect to accounting periods of insurance companies ending on or after 1.7.1999) by [S.I. 1999/498](#), [regs. 1, 9](#)

45 PAYE: meaning of payment. U.K.

- (1) The Taxes Act 1988 shall be amended as follows.
- (2) The following section shall be inserted after section 203—

“203A PAYE: meaning of payment.

- (1) For the purposes of section 203 and regulations under it a payment of, or on account of, any income assessable to income tax under Schedule E shall be treated as made at the time found in accordance with the following rules(taking the earlier or earliest time in a case where more than one rule applies)—
 - (a) the time when the payment is actually made;

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (b) the time when a person becomes entitled to the payment;
 - (c) in a case where the income is income from an office or employment with a company, the holder of the office or employment is a director of the company and sums on account of the income are credited in the company's accounts or records, the time when sums on account of the income are so credited;
 - (d) in a case where the income is income from an office or employment with a company, the holder of the office or employment is a director of the company and the amount of the income for a period is determined before the period ends, the time when the period ends;
 - (e) in a case where the income is income from an office or employment with a company, the holder of the office or employment is a director of the company and the amount of the income for a period is not known until the amount is determined after the period has ended, the time when the amount is determined.
- (2) Subsection (1)(c), (d) or (e) above applies whether or not the office or employment concerned is that of director.
- (3) Paragraph (c), (d) or (e) of subsection (1) above applies if the holder of the office or employment is a director of the company at any time in the year of assessment in which the time mentioned in the paragraph concerned falls.
- (4) For the purposes of the rule in subsection (1)(c) above, any fetter on the right to draw the sums is to be disregarded.
- (5) Subsections (5) and (6) of section 202B shall apply for the purposes of subsection (1) above as they apply for the purposes of section 202B(1).”
- (3) Section 203(4) (regulations may define payment) shall cease to have effect.
- (4) Subsection (2) above shall have effect to determine whether anything occurring on or after the day on which this Act is passed constitutes a payment for the purposes mentioned in the new section 203A.
- (5) But if an event occurring before the day on which this Act is passed constituted a payment of or on account of income for the purposes mentioned in the new section 203A, nothing occurring on or after that day shall constitute a payment of or on account of the same income for those purposes.

Interest

46 Relief for interest. U.K.

For the year 1989-90 the qualifying maximum defined in section 367(5) of the Taxes Act 1988 (limit on relief for interest on certain loans) shall be £30,000.

47 Close company loans: business expansion scheme. U.K.

In section 360 of the Taxes Act 1988 (loans to buy interest in close company), after subsection (3) there shall be inserted—

“(3A) Interest shall not be eligible for relief under section 353 by virtue of paragraph (a) of subsection (1) above in respect of shares acquired on or after

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

14th March 1989 if at any time the person by whom they are acquired, or that person's husband or wife, makes a claim for relief in respect of the munder Chapter III of Part VII.”

48 Close company loans: material interest. U.K.

(1) In section 360 of the Taxes Act 1988 for subsection (4) there shall be substituted—

“(4) Subject to section 360A, in this section expressions to which a meaning is assigned by Part XI have that meaning.”

(2) The following section shall be inserted after that section—

“360A Meaning of “material interest” in section 360.

(1) For the purposes of section 360(2)(a) an individual shall be treated as having a material interest in a company—

- (a) if he, either on his own or with one or more of his associates, or if any associate of his with or without other such associates, is the beneficial owner of, or able (directly or through the medium of other companies or by any other indirect means) to control, more than 5 per cent. of the ordinary share capital of the company, or
- (b) if, on an amount equal to the whole distributable income of the company falling to be apportioned under Part XI for the purpose of computing total income, more than 5 per cent. of that amount could be apportioned to him together with his associates (if any), or to any associate of his, or any such associates taken together.

(2) Subject to the following provisions of this section, in subsection (1) above “associate”, in relation to an individual, means—

- (a) any relative or partner of the individual;
- (b) the trustee or trustees of a settlement in relation to which the individual is, or any relative of his (living or dead) is or was, a settlor (“settlement” and “settlor” having the same meaning as in section 681(4)); and
- (c) where the individual is interested in any shares or obligations of the company which are subject to any trust, or are part of the estate of a deceased person, the trustee or trustees of the settlement concerned or, as the case may be, the personal representative of the deceased.

(3) In relation to any loan made after 5th April 1987, there shall be disregarded for the purposes of subsection (2)(c) above—

- (a) the interest of the trustees of an approved profit sharing scheme (within the meaning of section 187) in any shares which are held by them in accordance with the scheme and have not yet been appropriated to an individual; and
- (b) any rights exercisable by those trustees by virtue of that interest.

(4) In relation to any loan made on or after the day on which the Finance Act 1989 was passed, where the individual has an interest in shares or obligations of the company as a beneficiary of an employee benefit trust, the trustees shall not be regarded as associates of his by reason only of that interest unless subsection (6) below applies in relation to him.

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (5) In subsection (4) above “employee benefit trust” has the same meaning as in paragraph 7 of Schedule 8, except that in its application for this purpose paragraph 7(5)(b) shall have effect as if it referred to the day on which the Finance Act 1989 was passed instead of to 14th March 1989.
- (6) This subsection applies in relation to an individual if at any time on or after the day on which the Finance Act 1989 was passed—
 - (a) the individual, either on his own or with any one or more of his associates, or
 - (b) any associate of his, with or without other such associates, has been the beneficial owner of, or able (directly or through the medium of other companies or by any other indirect means) to control, more than 5 percent. of the ordinary share capital of the company.
- (7) Sub-paragraphs (9) to (12) of paragraph 7 of Schedule 8 shall apply for the purposes of subsection (6) above in relation to an individual as they apply for the purposes of that paragraph in relation to an employee.
- (8) In relation to any loan made before 14th November 1986, where the individual is interested in any shares or obligations of the company which are subject to any trust, or are part of the estate of a deceased person, subsection (2)(c) above shall have effect as if for the reference to the trustee or trustees of the settlement concerned or, as the case may be, the personal representative of the deceased there were substituted a reference to any person (other than the individual) interested in the settlement or estate, but subject to subsection (9) below.
- (9) Subsection (8) above shall not apply so as to make an individual an associate as being entitled or eligible to benefit under a trust—
 - (a) if the trust relates exclusively to an exempt approved scheme as defined in section 592; or
 - (b) if the trust is exclusively for the benefit of the employees, or the employees and directors, of the company or their dependants (and not wholly or mainly for the benefit of directors or their relatives), and the individual in question is not (and could not as a result of the operation of the trust become), either on his own or with his relatives, the beneficial owner of more than 5 per cent. of the ordinary share capital of the company;and in applying paragraph (b) above any charitable trusts which may arise on the failure or determination of other trusts shall be disregarded.
- (10) In this section “relative” means husband or wife, parent or remoter forebear, child or remoter issue or brother or sister.”

Benefits in kind

49 Car benefits. U.K.

- (1) In Schedule 6 to the Taxes Act 1988 (taxation of directors and others in respect of cars) for Part I (tables of flat rate cash equivalents) there shall be substituted—

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

“PART I U.K.

TABLES OF FLAT RATE CASH EQUIVALENTS

table A

CARS WITH AN ORIGINAL MARKET VALUE UP
TO £19,250 AND HAVING A CYLINDER CAPACITY

Cylinder capacity of car in cubic centimetres	Age of car at end of relevant year of assessment	
	Under 4 years	4 years or more
1400 or less	£1,400	£950
More than 1400 but not more than 2000	£1,850	£1,250
More than 2000	£2,950	£1,950

table B

CARS WITH AN ORIGINAL MARKET VALUE UP TO
£19,250 AND NOT HAVING A CYLINDER CAPACITY

Original market value of car	Age of car at end of relevant year of assessment	
	Under 4 years	4 years or more
Less than £6,000	£1,400	£950
£6,000 or more but less than £8,500	£1,850	£1,250
£8,500 or more but not more than £19,250	£2,950	£1,950

table B

CARS WITH AN ORIGINAL MARKET VALUE OF MORE THAN £19,250

Original market value of car	Age of car at end of relevant year of assessment	
	Under 4 years	4 years or more
More than £19,250 but not more than £29,000	£3,850	£2,600
More than £29,000	£6,150	£4,100”

(2) This section shall have effect for the year 1989-90 and subsequent years of assessment.

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

50 Security assets and services. U.K.

- (1) For the purposes of this section a security asset is an asset which improves personal security, and a security service is a service which improves personal security.
- (2) In a case where—
 - (a) a security asset or security service is provided for an employee by reason of his employment, or is used by an employee, and
 - (b) the cost is wholly or partly borne by or on behalf of a person (the provider) other than the employee,in charging tax under Schedule E on the emoluments from the employment a deduction shall be allowed of an amount equal to so much of the cost so borne as falls to be included in the emoluments of the employment.
- (3) In a case where—
 - (a) a security asset or security service is provided for or used by an employee,
 - (b) expenses in connection with the provision or use are incurred out of the emoluments of the employment, and
 - (c) the expenses are reimbursed by or on behalf of a person (the provider) other than the employee,in charging tax under Schedule E on the emoluments from the employment a deduction shall be allowed of an amount equal to the amount of the expenses.
- (4) Subsection (2) or (3) above shall not apply unless the asset or service is provided for or used by the employee to meet a threat which—
 - (a) is a special threat to his personal physical security, and
 - (b) arises wholly or mainly by virtue of the particular employment concerned.
- (5) Subsection (2) or (3) above shall not apply unless the provider has the meeting of that threat as his sole object in wholly or partly bearing the cost or reimbursing the expenses (as the case may be).
- (6) Subsection (2) or (3) above shall not apply in the case of a service unless the benefit resulting to the employee consists wholly or mainly of an improvement of his personal physical security.
- (7) Subsection (2) or (3) above shall not apply in the case of an asset unless the provider intends the asset to be used solely to improve personal physical security.

51 Assets used partly for security. U.K.

- (1) In a case where—
 - (a) apart from section 50(7) above, section 50(2) above would apply in the case of an asset, and
 - (b) the provider intends the asset to be used partly to improve personal physical security,section 50(2) shall nevertheless apply, but only so as to allow a deduction of the appropriate proportion of the amount there mentioned.
- (2) For the purposes of subsection (1) above the appropriate proportion of the amount mentioned in section 50(2) above is such proportion of that amount as is attributable to the provider's intention that the asset be used to improve personal physical security.

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (3) In a case where—
- (a) apart from section 50(7) above, section 50(3) above would apply in the case of an asset, and
 - (b) the provider intends the asset to be used partly to improve personal physical security,
- section 50(3) shall nevertheless apply, but only so as to allow a deduction of the appropriate proportion of the amount there mentioned.
- (4) For the purposes of subsection (3) above the appropriate proportion of the amount mentioned in section 50(3) above is such proportion of that amount as is attributable to the provider’s intention that the asset be used to improve personal physical security.

52 Security: supplementary. U.K.

- (1) If the provider intends the asset to be used solely to improve personal physical security, but there is another use for the asset which is incidental to improving personal physical security, that other use shall be ignored in construing section 50(7) above.
- (2) The fact that an asset or service improves the personal physical security of any member of the employee’s family or household, as well as that of the employee, shall not prevent section 50(2) or (3) above from applying.
- (3) In sections 50 and 51 above and this section—
 - (a) references to an asset do not include references to a car, a ship or an aircraft,
 - (b) references to an asset or service do not include references to a dwelling, grounds appurtenant to a dwelling, or living accommodation,
 - (c) references to an asset include references to equipment and a structure (such as a wall),
 - (d) references to an employee are to a person who holds an employment, and
 - (e) references to an employment include references to an office.
- (4) For the purposes of sections 50 and 51 above and this section in their application to an asset, it is immaterial whether or not the asset becomes affixed to land (whether constituting a dwelling or otherwise).
- (5) For the purposes of sections 50 and 51 above and this section in their application to an asset, it is immaterial whether or not the employee is or becomes entitled to the property in the asset or (in the case of a fixture) an estate or interest in the land concerned.
- (6) Sections 50 and 51 above and this section apply where expenditure is incurred on or after 6th April 1989 in or towards bearing a cost or in reimbursing expenses (as the case may be).

53 Employees earning £8,500 or more and directors. U.K.

- (1) For section 167 of the Taxes Act 1988 (which defines “director’s or higher-paid employment” for the purposes of Chapter II of Part V) there shall be substituted—

“167 Employment to which this Chapter applies.

- (1) This Chapter applies—

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) to employment as a director of a company (but subject to subsection (5) below), and
 - (b) to employment with emoluments at the rate of £8,500 a year or more.
- (2) For this purpose emoluments are to be calculated—
 - (a) on the basis that they include all such amounts as come, or would but for section 157(3) come, into charge under this Chapter or section 141, 142, 143 or 145, and
 - (b) without any deduction under section 198, 201 or 332(3).
- (3) Where a person is employed in two or more employments by the same employer and either—
 - (a) the total of the emoluments of those employments (applying this section) is at the rate of £8,500 a year or more, or
 - (b) this Chapter applies (apart from this subsection) to one or more of those employments,this Chapter shall apply to all the employments.
- (4) All employees of a partnership or body over which an individual or another partnership or body has control are to be treated for the purposes of this section (but not for any other purpose) as if the employment were an employment by the individual or by that other partnership or body as the case may be.
- (5) This Chapter shall not apply to a person's employment by reason only of its being employment as a director of a company (without prejudice to its application by virtue of subsection (1)(b) or (3) above) if he has no material interest in the company and either—
 - (a) his employment is as a full-time working director; or
 - (b) the company is non-profit making (meaning that neither does it carry on a trade nor do its functions consist wholly or mainly in the holding of investments or other property) or is established for charitable purposes only.”
- (2) In consequence of subsection (1) above—
 - (a) for the heading to Chapter II of Part V of the Taxes Act 1988 there shall be substituted “EMPLOYEES EARNING £8,500 OR MORE AND DIRECTORS”;
 - (b) the words “employment to which this Chapter applies” shall be substituted for the words “director's or higher-paid employment” in sections 153(1), 154(1), 157(1), 158(1), 160(1) and (2), 162(1), 163(1) and 165(6)(b) of that Act;
 - (c) for section 160(3) of that Act there shall be substituted—
 - “(3) Where—
 - (a) there was outstanding, at any time when a person was in employment to which this Chapter applies, the whole or part of a loan to him (or a relative of his) the benefit of which was obtained by reason of his employment, and
 - (b) that employment has terminated or ceased to be employment to which this Chapter applies,

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

subsection (2) above applies as if the employment had not terminated or, as the case may be, had not ceased to be employment to which this Chapter applies.”;

- (d) in section 162(5) of that Act, after the words “section 160(2)” there shall be inserted the words “(and where appropriate section 160(3))”;
- (e) for section 162(7) of that Act there shall be substituted—

“(7) If at the time of the event giving rise to a charge by virtue of subsection (6) above the employment in question has terminated, that subsection shall apply as if it had not.”

- (f) the words “ employment to which Chapter II of Part V applies ” shall be substituted for the words from “director’s” to “section 167)” in sections 332(2) (c) and 418(3)(a) of that Act;
- (g) the words “ employment to which Chapter II of Part V of the principal Act applies ” shall be substituted for the words “director’s or higher paid employment” in section 15(3)(a) of the ^{M9}Taxes Management Act 1970.

Marginal Citations

M9 1970 c. 9.

Medical insurance

[^{F33}54 Relief. U.K.]

- (1) This section applies where—
 - (a) on or after 6th April 1990 an individual makes a payment in respect of a premium under a contract of private medical insurance (whenever issued),
 - (b) the contract meets the requirement in subsection (2) below as to the person or persons insured,
 - (c) at the time the payment is made the contract is an eligible contract,
 - (d) the individual making the payment does not make it out of resources provided by another person for the purpose of enabling it to be made, and
 - (e) the individual making the payment is not entitled to claim any relief or deduction in respect of it under any other provision of the Tax Acts.
- (2) The requirement mentioned in subsection (1)(b) above is that the contract insures—
 - (a) an individual who at the time the payment is made is aged 60 or over and resident in the United Kingdom,
 - (b) individuals each of whom at that time is aged 60 or over and resident in the United Kingdom, or
 - (c) two individuals who are married to each other at that time, at least one of whom is aged 60 or over at that time, and each of whom is resident in the United Kingdom at that time.

[In a case where—

- ^{F34}(2A) (a) a payment is made in respect of a premium under a contract at a time when the contract meets the requirement in subsection (2) above by virtue of paragraph (c) of that subsection, and

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (b) a payment is made under the same contract at a time after one of the individuals has died and when the contract does not (apart from this subsection) meet the requirement in subsection (2) above by virtue only of the fact that the surviving spouse is not aged 60 or over at the time,
for the purposes of subsection (2) above in its application to the contract the surviving spouse shall be deemed to be aged 60 or over at the time mentioned in paragraph (b) above.]
- (3) If the payment is made by an individual who at the time it is made is resident in the United Kingdom (whether or not he is the individual or one of the individuals insured by the contract) [^{F35}the individual shall be entitled to relief under this subsection in respect of the payment; and (except where subsections (4) to (6) below apply) relief under this subsection shall be given—
- (a) in accordance with subsections (3A) to (3C) below, and
 - (b) only on a claim made for the purpose.]
- [Where an individual is entitled to relief under subsection (3) above in respect of one ^{F36}(3A) or more payments made in a given year of assessment, the amount of his liability for that year of assessment to income tax on his total income shall be the amount to which he would be liable apart from this section less whichever is the smaller of—
- (a) the amount found under subsection (3B) below, and
 - (b) the amount which reduces his liability to nil.
- (3B) The amount referred to in subsection (3A)(a) above is an amount found by—
- (a) taking the amount of the payment referred to in subsection (3A) above or (as the case may be) the aggregate amount of the payments there referred to, and
 - (b) finding an amount equal to tax on the amount taken under paragraph (a) above at the basic rate for the year of assessment concerned.
- (3C) In determining for the purposes of subsection (3A) above the amount of incomers on whom he would be liable apart from this section, no account shall be taken of—
- (a) any income tax reduction under Chapter I of Part VII of the Taxes Act 1988 or under section 347B of that Act;
 - (b) any income tax reduction under section 353(1A) of the Taxes Act 1988;
 - (c) any relief by way of a reduction of liability to tax which is given in accordance with any arrangements having effect by virtue of section 788 of the Taxes Act 1988 or by way of a credit under section 790(1) of that Act;
 - (d) any tax at the basic rate on so much of that person's income as is income the income tax on which he is entitled to charge against any other person or to deduct, retain or satisfy out of any payment.]
- (4) In such cases and subject to such conditions as the Board may specify in regulations, relief under subsection (3) above shall be given in accordance with subsections (5) and (6) below.
- (5) An individual who is entitled to such relief in respect of a payment may deduct and retain out of it an amount equal to income tax on it at the basic rate for the year of assessment in which it is made.
- (6) The person to whom the payment is made—
- (a) shall accept the amount paid after deduction in discharge of the individual's liability to the same extent as if the deduction had not been made, and

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (b) may, on making a claim [^{F37}in accordance with regulations], recover from the Board an amount equal to the amount deducted.
- (7) The Treasury may make regulations providing that in circumstances prescribed in the regulations—
- (a) an individual who has made a payment in respect of a premium under a contract of private medical insurance shall cease to be and be treated as not having been entitled to relief under subsection (3) above; and
- (b) he or the person to whom the payment was made (depending on the terms of the regulations) shall account to the Board for tax from which relief has been given on the basis that the individual was so entitled.
- (8) Regulations under subsection (7) above may include provision adapting or modifying the effect of any enactment relating to income tax in order to secure the performance of any obligation imposed under paragraph (b) of that subsection.
- (9) In this section—
- (a) references to a premium, in relation to a contract of insurance, are to any amount payable under the contract to the insurer, and
- (b) references to an individual who is resident in the United Kingdom at anytime include references to an individual who is at that time performing duties which are treated by virtue of section 132(4)(a) of the Taxes Act 1988 as performed in the United Kingdom.]

Textual Amendments

- F33** Ss. 54-57 repealed (31.1.1997 with effect as mentioned in Sch. 8 Pt. II(2), note of the amending Act) by 1997 c. 58, s. 52, **Sch. 8 Pt. II(2)** (with s. 3(3))
- F34** S. 54(2A) inserted (3.5.1994 with effect as mentioned in **Sch. 10 para. 4(2)** of the amending Act) by 1994 c. 9, s. 83, **Sch. 10 para. 4(1)**
- F35** Words and paras. (a)(b) substituted for words in s. 54(3) (3.5.1994 with effect in relation to payments on or after 6.4.1994) by 1994 c. 9, s. 83, **Sch. 10 para. 2(2)(4)**
- F36** S. 54(3A)-(3C) inserted (3.5.1994 with effect in relation to payments on or after 6.4.1994) by 1994 c. 9, s. 83, **Sch. 10 para. 2(3)(4)**
- F37** Words in s. 54(6)(b) inserted (29.4.1996) by 1996 c. 8, s. 129(2)

Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C11** S. 54 restricted (31.7.1997 with effect for the year 1997-1998 and subsequent years of assessment) by 1997 c. 58, s. 17(1)-(5) (with s. 3(3))
- C12** For regulations see S.I. 1989/2387 and S.I. 1989/2389 (in Part III Vol. 5 under “Private medical insurance”)

[^{F38}55 Eligible contracts. **U.K.**

- (1) This section has effect to determine whether a contract is at a particular time (the relevant time) an eligible contract for the purposes of section 54 above.
- (2) A contract is an eligible contract at the relevant time if—
- (a) it was entered into by an insurer who at the time it was entered into was a qualifying insurer and was approved by the Board for the purposes of this section,

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (b) the period of insurance under the contract does not exceed one year(commencing with the date it was entered into),
 - [at the relevant time the contract satisfies the conditions set out in
 - ^{F39}(ba) subsection (2A) below,
 - (bb) the contract is not one in the case of which subsection (2D) below applies,]
 - (c) the contract is not connected with any other contract at the relevant time and has not been connected with any other contract at any time since it was entered into, [^{F40}and]
 - (d) no benefit has been provided by virtue of the contract other than an approved benefit, [^{F41}and
 - (e) the contract meets one or more of the three conditions set out below.]
- [The conditions referred to in subsection (2)(ba) above are that—
- ^{F42}(2A) (a) the contract either provides indemnity in respect of all or any of the costs of all or any of the treatments, medical services and other matters for the time being specified in regulations made by the Treasury, or in addition to providing indemnity of that description provides cash benefits falling within rules for the time being so specified,
- (b) the contract does not confer any right other than such a right as is mentioned in paragraph (a) above or is for the time being specified in regulations made by the Treasury,
 - (c) the premium under the contract is reasonable, and
 - (d) the contract satisfies such other requirements as are for the time being specified in regulations made by the Treasury.
- (2B) In a case where—
- (a) at the relevant time the contract confers a material right, or more than one such right, but
 - (b) the total cost to the insurer of providing benefits in pursuance of the material right or (as the case may be) in pursuance of all the material rights would not exceed the prescribed sum,
- the contract shall not thereby be regarded as failing to satisfy at the relevant time the condition set out in subsection (2A)(b) above.
- (2C) For the purposes of subsection (2B) above a material right is a right which—
- (a) is not a right such as is mentioned in subsection (2A)(a) above or such as is for the time being specified in regulations made under subsection (2A)(b) above, and
 - (b) is not a right to a cash benefit.
- (2D) This subsection applies in the case of a contract (the main contract) if—
- (a) at least one other contract is entered into which is a contract (a collateral contract) under which a benefit is provided in consideration of the insured's entering into the main contract, and
 - (b) the cost to the insurer of fulfilling his obligations under the collateral contract (or, if there is more than one collateral contract, of fulfilling his obligations under all of them) exceeds the prescribed sum.]
- [The first condition is that the contract is certified by the Board under section 56 below
- ^{F43}(3) at the relevant time.

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- ^{F43}(4) The second condition is that, at the time the contract was entered into, it conformed with a standard form certified by the Board as a standard form of eligible contract.
- ^{F43}(5) The third condition is that, at the time the contract was entered into, it conformed with a form varying from a standard form so certified in no other respect than by making additions—
- (a) which were (at the time the contract was entered into) certified by the Board as compatible with an eligible contract when made to that standard form, and
 - (b) which (at that time) satisfied any conditions subject to which the additions were so certified.
- ^{F43}(6) Where a contract is varied, and the relevant time falls after the time the variation takes effect, subsections (1) to (5) above shall have effect as if “entered into” read “varied” in each place where it occurs in subsections (4) and (5) above.]
- (7) For the purposes of this section a contract is connected with another contract at any time if—
- (a) they are simultaneously in force at that time,
 - (b) either of them was entered into with reference to the other, or with a view to enabling the other to be entered into on particular terms, or with a view to facilitating the other being entered into on particular terms, and
 - (c) the terms on which either of them was entered into would have been significantly less favourable to the insured if the other had not been entered into.
- (8) For the purposes of this section each of the following is a qualifying insurer—
- (a) an insurer lawfully carrying on in the United Kingdom business of any of the classes specified in Part I of Schedule 2 to the ^{M10}Insurance Companies Act 1982;
 - (b) an insurer not carrying on business in the United Kingdom but carrying on business in another member State and being either a national of a member State or a company or partnership formed under the law of any part of the United Kingdom or another member State and having its registered office, central administration or principal place of business in a member State.
- (9) For the purposes of this section a benefit is an approved benefit if it is provided in pursuance of a right of a description
- ^{F44}(a) [mentioned in subsection (2A)(a) above, or
 - (b) for the time being specified in regulations made under subsection (2A)(b) above.]
- [For the purposes of this section a benefit is also an approved benefit if it is not a cash
- ^{F45}(10) benefit and—
- (a) it is a single benefit provided otherwise than as mentioned in subsection (9) above and the cost to the insurer of providing it does not exceed the prescribed sum, or
 - (b) it is one of a number of benefits provided otherwise than as mentioned in subsection (9) above and the total cost to the insurer of providing the benefits does not exceed the prescribed sum.
- (11) In this section the reference to a premium, in relation to a contract of insurance, is to any amount payable under the contract to the insurer.

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (12) For the purposes of this section the prescribed sum is £30.
- (13) The Treasury may by order substitute for the sum for the time being specified in subsection (12) above such sum as may be specified in the order; and any such substitution shall have effect in relation to cases where the relevant time falls on or after such date as is specified in the order.]]

Textual Amendments

- F38** Ss. 54-57 repealed (31.1.1997 with effect as mentioned in Sch. 8 Pt. II(2), note of the amending Act) by 1997 c. 58, s. 52, **Sch. 8 Pt. II(2)** (with s. 3(3))
- F39** S. 55(2)(ba)(bb) inserted (3.5.1994 with effect as mentioned in Sch. 10 para. 5(8) of the amending Act) by 1994 c. 9, s. 83, **Sch. 10 para. 5(2)**
- F40** Word in s. 55(2)(c) inserted (3.5.1994 with effect as mentioned in Sch. 10 para. 5(8) of the amending Act) by 1994 c. 9, s. 83, **Sch. 10 para. 5(3)(a)**
- F41** S. 55(2)(e) and the word “and” immediately preceding it repealed (3.5.1994 with effect as mentioned in Sch. 10 para. 5(8) of the amending Act) by 1994 c. 9, ss. 83, 258, Sch. 10 para. 5(3)(b), **Sch. 26 Pt. V(3)**, Note 2
- F42** S. 55(2A)-(2D) inserted (3.5.1994 with effect as mentioned in Sch. 10 para. 5(8) of the amending Act) by 1994 c. 9, s. 83, **Sch. 10 para. 5(4)**
- F43** S. 55(3)-(6) repealed (3.5.1994 with effect as mentioned in Sch. 10 para. 5(8) of the amending Act) by 1994 c. 9, ss. 83, 258, Sch. 10 para. 5(5), **Sch. 26 Pt. V(3)**, Note 2
- F44** Paras. (a)(b) substituted for words in s. 55(9) (3.5.1994 with effect as mentioned in Sch. 10 para. 5(8) of the amending Act) by 1994 c. 9, s. 83, **Sch. 10 para. 5(6)**
- F45** S. 55(10)-(13) inserted (3.5.1994 with effect as mentioned in Sch. 10 para. 5(8) of the amending Act) by 1994 c. 9, s. 83, **Sch. 10 para. 5(7)**

Marginal Citations

- M10** 1982 c.50.

[^{F46}56 Certification of contracts. U.K.]

- (1) The Board shall certify a contract under this section if it satisfies the conditions set out in subsection (3) below; and the certification shall be expressed to take effect from the time the conditions are satisfied, and shall take effect accordingly.
- (2) The Board shall revoke a certification of a contract under this section if it comes to their notice that the contract has ceased to satisfy the conditions set out in subsection (3) below; and the revocation shall be expressed to take effect from the time the conditions ceased to be satisfied, and shall take effect accordingly.
- (3) The conditions referred to above are that—
- the contract either provides indemnity in respect of all or any of the costs of all or any of the treatments, medical services and other matters for the time being specified in regulations made by the Treasury, or in addition to providing indemnity of that description provides cash benefits falling within rules for the time being so specified,
 - the contract does not confer any right other than such a right as is mentioned in paragraph (a) above or is for the time being specified in regulations made by the Treasury,
 - the premium under the contract is in the Board’s opinion reasonable, and

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (d) the contract satisfies such other requirements as are for the time being specified in regulations made by the Treasury.
- (4) The certification of a contract by the Board under this section shall cease to have effect if the contract is varied; but this is without prejudice to the application of the preceding provisions of this section to the contract as varied.
- (5) Where the Board refuse to certify a contract under this section, or they revoke a certification, an appeal may be made to the Special Commissioners by—
- (a) the insurer, or
 - (b) any person who (if the policy were certified) would be entitled to relief under section 54 above.
- (6) Where a contract is certified under this section, or a certification is revoked or otherwise ceases to have effect, any adjustments resulting from the certification or from its revocation or ceasing to have effect shall be made.
- (7) Subsection (6) above applies where a certification or revocation takes place on appeal as it applies in the case of any other certification or revocation.
- (8) In this section the reference to a premium, in relation to a contract of insurance, is to any amount payable under the contract to the insurer.]

Textual Amendments

F46 Ss. 54-57 repealed (31.1.1997 with effect as mentioned in Sch. 8 Pt. II(2), note of the amending Act) by 1997 c. 58, s. 52, **Sch. 8 Pt. II(2)** (with s. 3(3))

Modifications etc. (not altering text)

C13 For regulations see **S.I. 1989/2389** (in Part III Vol. 5 under “Private medical insurance”)

[^{F47}57 **Medical insurance: supplementary.** **U.K.**

- (1) The Board may by regulations—
- (a) provide that a claim under section 54(3) or (6)(b) above shall be made in such form and manner, shall be made at such time, and shall be accompanied by such documents, as may be prescribed;
 - ^{F48}(aa) [make provision for and with respect to appeals against a decision of an officer of the Board or the Board with respect to a claim under section 54(6)(b) above;]
 - (b) make provision, in relation to payments in respect of which a person is entitled to relief under section 54 above, for the giving by insurers in such circumstances as may be prescribed of certificates of payment in such form as may be prescribed to such persons as may be prescribed;
 - (c) provide that a person who provides (or has at any time provided) insurance under contracts of private medical insurance shall comply with any notice which is served on him by the Board and which requires him within a prescribed period to make available for the Board’s inspection documents (of a prescribed kind) relating to such contracts;
 - (d) provide that persons of such a description as may be prescribed shall, within a prescribed period of being required to do so by the Board, furnish to the

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- Board information (of a prescribed kind) about contracts of private medical insurance;
- (e) make provision with respect to the approval of insurers for the purposes of section 55 above and the withdrawal of approval for the purposes of that section;
 - (f) make provision for and with respect to appeals against decisions of the Board with respect to the giving or withdrawal of approval of insurers for the purposes of section 55 above;
 - (g) make provision with respect to the certification by the Board of standard forms of eligible contract and variations from standard forms of eligible contract certified by them;
 - (h) make provision for and with respect to appeals against decisions of the Board with respect to the certification of standard forms of eligible contractor variations from standard forms of eligible contract certified by them;
 - (i) provide that certification, or the revocation of a certification, under section 56 above shall be carried out in such form and manner as may be prescribed;
 - (j) make provision with respect to appeals against decisions of the Board with respect to certification or the revocation of certification under section 56 above;
 - (k) make provision generally as to administration in connection with sections 54 to 56 above.
- (2) The words “ Regulations under section 57 of the Finance Act 1989 ” shall be added at the end of each column in the Table in section 98 of the ^{M11}Taxes Management Act 1970 (penalties for failure to furnish information etc.)
- (3) The following provisions of the Taxes Management Act 1970, namely—
- ^{F49}(a) [section 29(1)(c) (excessive relief) as it has effect apart from section 29(2) to (10) of that Act;]
 - (b) section 30 (tax repaid in error etc.) [^{F50}apart from subsection (1B)],
 - (c) [^{F51}section 86] (interest), and
 - (d) section 95 (incorrect return or accounts),
- [^{F52}shall apply in relation to an amount which is paid to any person by the Board as an amount recoverable by virtue of section 54(6)(b) above but to which that person is not entitled as if it were income tax which ought not to have been repaid and, where that amount was claimed by that person, as if it had been repaid as respects a chargeable period as a relief which was not due.]
- ^{F53}(3A) [In the application of section 86 of the Taxes Management Act 1970 by virtue of subsection (3) above in relation to sums due and payable by virtue of an assessment made under section 29(1)(c) or 30 of that Act, as applied by that subsection, the relevant date—
- (a) in a case where the person falling within section 54(6) above has made any interim claim, within the meaning of regulations made under subsection (1) and section 54(4) above, as respects some part of the year of assessment for which the assessment is made, is 1st January in that year of assessment; and
 - (b) in any other case, is the later of the following dates, that is to say—
 - (i) 1st January in the year of assessment for which the assessment is made; or
 - (ii) the date of the making of the payment by the Board which gives rise to the assessment.]

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (4) In sections ^{F54} . . . 257D(8) and 265(3) of the Taxes Act 1988 after paragraph (c) there shall be inserted
- (d) on account of any payments to which section 54(5) of the Finance Act 1989 applies”.
- (5) In subsection (1) above—
- “eligible contract” has the meaning given by section 55 above, and
- “prescribed” means prescribed by or, in relation to form, under the regulations.]

Textual Amendments

- F47** Ss. 54-57 repealed (31.1.1997 with effect as mentioned in Sch. 8 Pt. II(2), note of the amending Act) by 1997 c. 58, s. 52, **Sch. 8 Pt. II(2)** (with s. 3(3))
- F48** S. 57(1)(aa) inserted (29.4.1996) by 1996 c. 8, s. 129(3)
- F49** S. 57(3)(a) substituted (29.4.1996 with effect as mentioned in Sch. 18 para. 17 of the amending Act) by 1996 c. 8, s. 132, **Sch. 18 para. 12(2)(a)**
- F50** Words in s. 57(3)(b) inserted (29.4.1996 with effect as mentioned in Sch. 18 para. 17 of the amending Act) by 1996 c. 8, s. 132, **Sch. 18 para. 12(2)(b)**
- F51** Words in s. 57(3)(c) substituted (29.4.1996 with effect as mentioned in Sch. 18 para. 17 of the amending Act) by 1996 c. 8, s. 132, **Sch. 18 para. 12(2)(c)**
- F52** Words in s. 57(3) substituted (29.4.1996 with effect as mentioned in Sch. 18 para. 17 of the amending Act) by 1996 c. 8, s. 132, **Sch. 18 para. 12(2)(d)**
- F53** S. 57(3A) inserted (29.4.1996 with effect as mentioned in Sch. 18 para. 17 of the amending Act) by 1996 c. 8, s. 132, **Sch. 18 para. 12(3)**
- F54** Words in s. 57(4) repealed (16.7.1992) by virtue of Finance (No. 2) Act 1992 (c. 48), ss. 20, 82, Sch. 5 para. 10, **Sch. 18 Pt. VII(1)**

Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C14** See S.I. 1989/2387

Marginal Citations

- M11** 1970 c. 9.

Charities

58 Payroll deduction scheme. **U.K.**

- (1) In section 202(7) of the Taxes Act 1988 (which limits to £240 the deductions attracting relief) for “£240” there shall be substituted “£480”.
- (2) This section shall have effect for the year 1989-90 and subsequent years of assessment.

^{F55}59 **U.K.**

Textual Amendments

- F55** S. 59 repealed (28.7.2000 with effect as mentioned in s. 41(9) of the amending Act) by 2000 c. 17, ss. 41(7), 156, **Sch. 40 Pt. II(1)**, note 3

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

60 British Museum and Natural History Museum. U.K.

(1) In subsection (1) of section 507 of the Taxes Act 1988 (which gives tax exemption to the National Heritage Memorial Fund and the Historic Buildings and Monuments Commission) after paragraph (b) there shall be inserted—

- “(c) the Trustees of the British Museum;
- (d) the Trustees of the British Museum (Natural History);” and subsection (2) of that section (which gives partial tax exemption to those Trustees) shall cease to have effect.

(2) In section 339(9) of that Act, for the words from “the Trustees”(where those words first occur) to “History) and” there shall be substituted the words “each of the bodies mentioned in section 507, and in subsections (1) to (5) above includes”.

^{F56}(3)

(4) Subsection (1) above shall apply in relation to accounting periods ending on or after 14th March 1989, and [^{F57}subsection (2)] above shall apply to payments due on or after that day.

Textual Amendments

F56 S. 60(3) repealed (1.5.1995 with effect as mentioned in s. 74(2), Sch. 29 Pt. VIII(8) of the amending Act) by 1995 c. 4, ss. 74(1), 162, Sch. 17 Pt. III para. 25, Sch. 29 Pt. VIII(8)

F57 Words in s. 60(4) substituted (1.5.1995 with effect as mentioned in s. 74(2) of the amending Act) by 1995 c. 4, s. 74, Sch. 17 Pt. III para. 25

Profit-related pay, share schemes etc.

[^{F58}61 Profit-related pay. U.K.]

Schedule 4 to this Act (which amends the provisions of the Taxes Act 1988 relating to profit-related pay) shall have effect.]

Textual Amendments

F58 S. 61 repealed (19.3.1997 with effect as mentioned in Sch. 18 Pt. VI(3), notes 1, 2 of the amending Act) by 1997 c. 16, ss. 61(2)(3), 113, Sch. 18 Pt. VI(3)

62 Savings-related share option schemes. U.K.

(1) Part III of Schedule 9 to the Taxes Act 1988 (requirements applicable to savings-related share option schemes) shall be amended as follows.

^{F59}(2)

(3) In paragraph 25(b) (requirement that price at which share may be acquired under scheme be not less than 90 per cent. of market value), for the words “90 per cent.” there shall be substituted the words “80 per cent.”.

(4) Subsection (2) above shall come into force on such day as the Treasury may by order made by statutory instrument appoint.

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

Textual Amendments

F59 S. 62(2) repealed (1.9.1991) by Finance Act 1991 (c. 31, SIF 63:1), ss. 40, 123, Sch. 19 Pt. V Note 10; S.I. 1991/1741, art. 2

^{F60}63 Profit sharing schemes. U.K.

Textual Amendments

F60 S. 63 repealed (having effect for the year 1991-92 and subsequent years of assessment) by Finance Act 1991 (c. 31, SIF 63:1), s. 123, Sch. 19 Pt. V Note 6.

64 Share option and profit sharing schemes: shares of consortium member. U.K.

In paragraph 10 of Schedule 9 to the Taxes Act 1988, paragraph (c)(ii)(which requires a consortium member to hold not less than three-twentieths of share capital of grantor company etc. if member's shares are to qualify as scheme shares) shall cease to have effect.

65 Employee share schemes: material interest. U.K.

In Schedule 9 to the Taxes Act 1988 the following paragraph shall be inserted after paragraph 39—

Shares subject to an employee benefit trust

- “40 (1) Where an individual has an interest in shares or obligations of the company as a beneficiary of an employee benefit trust, the trustees shall not be regarded as associates of his by reason only of that interest unless sub-paragraph (3) below applies in relation to him.
- (2) In this paragraph “employee benefit trust” has the same meaning as in paragraph 7 of Schedule 8.
- (3) This sub-paragraph applies in relation to an individual if at any time on or after 14th March 1989—
- (a) the individual, either on his own or with any one or more of his associates, or
 - (b) any associate of his, with or without other such associates,
- has been the beneficial owner of, or able (directly or through the medium of other companies or by any other indirect means) to control, more than 25per cent., or in the case of a share option scheme which is not a savings-related share option scheme more than 10 per cent., of the ordinary share capital of the company.
- (4) Sub-paragraphs (9) to (12) of paragraph 7 of Schedule 8 shall apply for the purposes of this paragraph in relation to an individual as they apply for the purposes of that paragraph in relation to an employee.”

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

66 Priority share allocations for employees etc. U.K.

- (1) In relation to offers made on or after 11th October 1988, section 68 of the ^{M12}Finance Act 1988 (which provides for the benefits derived from priority rights in share offers to be disregarded in certain circumstances) shall have effect with the following amendments.
- (2) In subsection (1), the words from “at the fixed price” to “tendered” shall be omitted.
- (3) After that subsection there shall be inserted—
 - “(1A) Where the price payable by the director or employee is less than the fixed price or the lowest price successfully tendered, subsection (1) above shall not apply to the benefit represented by the difference in price.”
- (4) In subsection (2), for paragraph (a) (priority shares not to exceed 10 percent. of shares subject to the offer) there shall be substituted—
 - “(a) that the aggregate number of shares subject to the offer that may be allocated as mentioned in subsection (1)(b) above does not exceed the limit specified in subsection (2A) below or, as the case may be, either of the limits specified in subsection (2B) below”.
- (5) After subsection (2) there shall be inserted—
 - “(2A) Except where subsection (2B) below applies, the limit relevant for the purposes of subsection (2)(a) above is 10 per cent. of the shares subject to the offer (including the shares that may be allocated as mentioned in subsection (1)(b) above).
 - (2B) Where the offer is part of arrangements which include one or more other offers to the public of shares of the same class, the limits relevant for the purposes of subsection (2)(a) above are—
 - (a) 40 per cent. of the shares subject to the offer (including the shares that may be allocated as mentioned in subsection (1)(b) above), and
 - (b) 10 per cent. of all the shares of the class in question (including the shares that may be so allocated) that are subject to any of the offers forming part of the arrangements.”

Marginal Citations

M12 1988 c. 39.

Employee share ownership trusts

67 Tax relief. U.K.

- (1) This section applies where—
 - (a) a company expends a sum in making a payment by way of contribution to the trustees of a trust which is a qualifying employee share ownership trust at the time the sum is expended,
 - (b) at that time, the company or a company which it then controls has employees who are eligible to benefit under the terms of the trust deed,
 - (c) at that time the company is resident in the United Kingdom,

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (d) before the expiry of the expenditure period the sum is expended by the trustees for one or more of the qualifying purposes, and
 - (e) before the end of the claim period a claim for relief under this section is made.
- (2) In such a case the sum—
- (a) shall be deducted in computing for the purposes of Schedule D the [^{F61}profits] of a trade carried on by the company, or
 - (b) if the company is an investment company or a company in the case of which section 75 of the Taxes Act 1988 applies by virtue of section 76 of that Act, shall be treated as expenses of management.
- (3) For the purposes of subsection (1)(b) above, the question whether one company is controlled by another shall be construed in accordance with section 840 of the Taxes Act 1988.
- (4) For the purposes of subsection (1)(d) above each of the following is a qualifying purpose—
- (a) the acquisition of shares in the company which established the trust;
 - (b) the repayment of sums borrowed;
 - (c) the payment of interest on sums borrowed;
 - (d) the payment of any sum to a person who is a beneficiary under the terms of the trust deed;
 - (e) the meeting of expenses.
- (5) For the purposes of subsection (1)(d) above the expenditure period is the period of nine months beginning with the day following the end of the period of account in which the sum is charged as an expense of the company, or such longer period as the Board may allow by notice given to the company.
- (6) For the purposes of subsection (1)(e) above the claim period is the period of two years beginning with the day following the end of the period of account in which the sum is charged as an expense of the company.
- (7) For the purposes of this section the trustees of an employee share ownership trust shall be taken to expend sums paid to them in the order in which the sums are received by them (irrespective of the number of companies making payments).

Textual Amendments

F61 Words in s. 67(2)(a) substituted (31.7.1998) by 1998 c. 36, s. 46(3), **Sch. 7 para. 3**

Modifications etc. (not altering text)

C15 See Finance Act 1990 (c. 29) ss.31–40—.roll-over relief for disposal of assets to employee share ownership trusts

68 Principal charges to tax. **U.K.**

- (1) This section applies where a chargeable event (within the meaning of section 69 below) occurs in relation to the trustees of an employee share ownership trust.
- (2) In such a case—

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) the trustees shall be treated as receiving, when the event occurs, annual profits or gains whose amount is equal to the chargeable amount (within the meaning of section 70 below),
 - (b) the profits or gains shall be chargeable to tax under Case VI of Schedule D for the year of assessment in which the event occurs, and
 - (c) the rate at which the tax is chargeable shall be [^{F62}the rate applicable to trusts] for the year of assessment in which the event occurs.
- (3) If the whole or any part of the tax assessed on the trustees is not paid before the expiry of the period of six months beginning with the day on which the assessment becomes final and conclusive, a notice of liability to tax under this subsection may be served on a qualifying company and the tax or the part unpaid (as the case may be) shall be payable by the company on service of the notice.
- (4) Where a notice of liability is served under subsection (3) above—
- (a) any interest which is due on the tax or the part (as the case may be) and has not been paid by the trustees, and
 - (b) any interest accruing due on the tax or the part (as the case may be) after the date of service,
- shall be payable by the company.
- (5) Where a notice of liability is served under subsection (3) above and any amount payable by the company (whether on account of tax or interest) is not paid by the company before the expiry of the period of three months beginning with the date of service, the amount unpaid may be recovered from the trustees (without prejudice to the right to recover it instead from the company).
- (6) For the purposes of this section each of the following is a qualifying company—
- (a) the company which established the employee share ownership trust;
 - (b) any company falling within subsection (7) below.
- (7) A company falls within this subsection if, before it is sought to serve a notice of liability on it under subsection (3) above—
- (a) it has paid a sum to the trustees, and
 - (b) the sum has been deducted as mentioned in section 67(2)(a) above or treated as mentioned in section 67(2)(b) above.

Textual Amendments

F62 Words in s. 68(2)(c) substituted (27.7.1993 with effect for the year 1993-94 and subsequent years of assessment) by 1993 c. 34, s. 79, Sch. 6 paras.20, **25(1)**

Modifications etc. (not altering text)

C16 See Finance Act 1990 (c. 29) ss.31–40—.roll-over relief for disposal of assets to employee share ownership trusts

69 Chargeable events. **U.K.**

- (1) For the purposes of section 68 above each of the following is a chargeable event in relation to the trustees of an employee share ownership trust—

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) the transfer of securities by the trustees, if the transfer is not a qualifying transfer;
 - (b) the transfer of securities by the trustees to persons who are at the time of the transfer beneficiaries under the terms of the trust deed, if the terms on which the transfer is made are not qualifying terms;
 - (c) the retention of securities by the trustees at the expiry of the [^{F63}qualifying period] beginning with the date on which they acquired them;
 - (d) the expenditure of a sum by the trustees for a purpose other than a qualifying purpose.
 - [^{F64}(e) where—
 - (i) the trustees make a qualifying transfer within subsection (3AA) below for a consideration, and
 - (ii) they do not, during the period specified in subsection (5A) below, expend a sum of not less than the amount of that consideration for one or more qualifying purposes,

the expiry of that period.]
- (2) For the purposes of subsection (1)(a) above a transfer is a qualifying transfer if it is made to a person who at the time of the transfer is a beneficiary under the terms of the trust deed.
- (3) For the purposes of subsection (1)(a) above a transfer is also a qualifying transfer if—
- (a) it is made to the trustees of a scheme which at the time of the transfer is a profit sharing scheme approved under Schedule 9 to the Taxes Act 1988, and
 - (b) it is made for a consideration which is not less than the price the securities might reasonably be expected to fetch on a sale in the open market.
- [^{F65}(3AA) For the purposes of subsection (1)(a) above a transfer is also a qualifying transfer if—
- (a) it is a transfer of relevant shares made to the trustees of the plan trust of an employee share ownership plan,
 - (b) the plan is approved under Schedule 8 to the Finance Act 2000 when the transfer is made, and
 - (c) the consideration (if any) for which the transfer is made does not exceed the market value of the shares.
- (3AB) For the purpose of determining whether a transfer by the trustees is a qualifying transfer within subsection (3AA) above, where on or after 21st March 2000—
- (a) the trustees transfer or dispose of part of a holding of shares (whether by way of a qualifying transfer or otherwise), and
 - (b) the holding includes any relevant shares,
- the relevant shares shall be treated as transferred or disposed of before any other shares included in that holding.
- For this purpose “holding” means any number of shares of the same class held by the trustees, growing or diminishing as shares of that class are acquired or disposed of.
- (3AC) For the purposes of subsections (3AA) and (3AB) above—
- “market value” has the same meaning as in Schedule 8 to the Finance Act 2000; and
 - “relevant shares” means—

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (i) shares that are held by the trustees of the employee share ownership trust at midnight on 20th March 2000, and
- (ii) shares purchased by those trustees with original funds after that time.

(3AD) For the purposes of subsection (3AC) above—

- (a) “original funds” means any money held by the trustees of the employee share ownership trust in a bank or building society account at midnight on 20th March 2000, and
- (b) any payment made by the trustees after that time (whether to acquire shares or otherwise) shall be treated as made out of original funds (and not out of money received after that time) until those funds are exhausted.]

[^{F66}(3A) For the purposes of subsection (1)(a) above a transfer is also a qualifying transfer if it is made by way of exchange in circumstances mentioned in section 85(1) of the Capital Gains Tax Act 1979 or section 135(1) of the Taxation of Chargeable Gains Act 1992.]

(4) For the purposes of subsection (1)(b) above a transfer of securities is made on qualifying terms if—

- (a) all the securities transferred at the same time [^{F67}other than those transferred on a transfer such as is mentioned in subsection (4ZA) below] are transferred on similar terms,
- (b) securities have been offered to all the persons who are beneficiaries under the terms of the trust deed [^{F68}by virtue of a rule which conforms with paragraph 4(2), (3) or (4) of Schedule 5 to this Act] when the transfer is made, and
- (c) securities are transferred to all such [^{F69}persons] who have accepted.

[^{F70}(4ZA) For the purposes of subsection (1)(b) above a transfer of securities is also made on qualifying terms if—

- (a) it is made to a person exercising a right to acquire shares, and
- (b) that right was obtained in accordance with the provisions of a savings-related share option scheme within the meaning of Schedule 9 to the Taxes Act 1988—
 - (i) which was established by, or by a company controlled by, the company which established the trust, and
 - (ii) which is approved under that Schedule, and
- (c) that right is being exercised in accordance with the provisions of that scheme, and
- (d) the consideration for the transfer is payable to the trustees.]

[^{F71}(4A) For the purposes of subsection (1)(c) above the qualifying period is—

- (a) seven years, in the case of trusts established on or before the day on which the Finance Act 1994 was passed;
- (b) twenty years, in the case of other trusts;

and for this purpose a trust is established when the deed under which it is established is executed.]

(5) For the purposes of subsection (1)(d) [^{F72}or (e)] above each of the following is a qualifying purpose—

- (a) the acquisition of shares in the company which established the trust;
- (b) the repayment of sums borrowed;
- (c) the payment of interest on sums borrowed;

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (d) the payment of any sum to a person who is a beneficiary under the terms of the trust deed;
- (e) the meeting of expenses.

[^{F73}(5A) The period referred to in paragraph (e) of subsection (1) above is the period—

- (a) beginning with the qualifying transfer mentioned in that paragraph, and
- (b) ending nine months after the end of the period of account in which that qualifying transfer took place.

For this purpose the period of account means the period of account of the company that established the employee share ownership trust.]

- (6) For the purposes of subsection (4) above, the fact that terms vary according to the levels of remuneration of beneficiaries, the length of their service, or similar factors, shall not be regarded as meaning that the terms are not similar.
- (7) In ascertaining for the purposes of this section whether particular securities are retained, securities acquired earlier by the trustees shall be treated as transferred by them before securities acquired by them later.
- (8) For the purposes of this section trustees—
 - (a) acquire securities when they become entitled to them (subject to the exceptions in subsection (9) below);
 - (b) transfer securities to another person when that other becomes entitled to them;
 - (c) retain securities if they remain entitled to them.
- (9) The exceptions are these—
 - (a) if securities are issued to trustees in exchange in circumstances mentioned in section [^{F74}135(1) of the Taxation of Chargeable Gains Act 1992], they shall be treated as having acquired them when they became entitled to the securities for which they are exchanged;
 - (b) if trustees become entitled to securities as a result of a reorganisation, they shall be treated as having acquired them when they became entitled to the original shares which those securities represent (construing “reorganisation” and “original shares” in accordance with section [^{F74}126] of that Act).
- (10) If trustees agree to take a transfer of securities, for the purposes of this section they shall be treated as becoming entitled to them when the agreement is made and not on a later transfer made pursuant to the agreement.
- (11) If trustees agree to transfer securities to another person, for the purposes of this section the other person shall be treated as becoming entitled to them when the agreement is made and not on a later transfer made pursuant to the agreement.
- (12) For the purposes of this section the following are securities—
 - (a) shares;
 - (b) debentures.

Textual Amendments

F63 Words in s. 69(1)(c) substituted (3.5.1994) by 1994 c. 9, s. 102, **Sch. 13 para. 6(2)**

F64 S. 69(1)(e) inserted (28.7.2000) by 2000 c. 17, s. 55(2)

F65 S. 69(3AA)-(3AD) inserted (28.7.2000) by 2000 c. 17, s. 55(3)

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- F66** S. 69(3A) inserted (16.7.1992, the amending provision applying in relation to exchanges made on or after 1.1.1992) by Finance (No. 2) Act 1992 (c. 48), s. 36(1)(2)
- F67** Words in s. 69(4)(a) inserted (29.4.1996 with effect as mentioned in s. 120(12) of the amending Act) by 1996 c. 8, s. 120(3)(a)
- F68** Words in s. 69(4)(b) inserted (29.4.1996 with effect as mentioned in s. 120(12) of the amending Act) by 1996 c. 8, s. 120(3)(b)
- F69** Word in s. 69(4)(c) substituted (29.4.1996 with effect as mentioned in s. 120(12) of the amending Act) by 1996 c. 8, s. 120(3)(c)
- F70** S. 69(4ZA) inserted (29.4.1996 with effect as mentioned in s. 120(12) of the amending Act) by 1996 c. 8, s. 120(4)
- F71** S. 69(4A) inserted (3.5.1994) by 1994 c. 9, s. 102, Sch. 13 para. 6(3)
- F72** Words in s. 69(5) inserted (28.7.2000) by 2000 c. 17, s. 55(4)
- F73** S. 69(5A) inserted (28.7.2000) by 2000 c. 17, s. 55(5)
- F74** Words in s. 69(9) substituted (in relation to tax for the year 1992-1993 and subsequent years subject as mentioned in s. 289 of the substituting Act) by Taxation of Chargeable Gains Act 1992 (c. 12), ss. 289, 290, Sch. 10 para. 19(1) (with s. 60, 101(1), 171, 201(3))

Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C17** See Finance Act 1990 (c. 29) ss.31–40—*roll-over relief for disposal of assets to employee share ownership trusts*
- C18** Definition employed for purposes of Finance Act 1990 (c. 29) s. 36—*roll-over relief where replacement asset owned*

70 Chargeable amounts. U.K.

- (1) This section has effect to determine the chargeable amount for the purposes of section 68 above.
- (2) If the chargeable event falls within section 69(1)(a), (b) or (c) above the following rules shall apply—
- (a) if the event constitutes a disposal of the securities by the trustees for the purposes of the [F75 Taxation of Chargeable Gains Act 1992], the chargeable amount is an amount equal to the sums allowable under section [F75 38(1)(a)] and (b) of that Act;
- (b) if the event does not constitute such a disposal, the chargeable amount is an amount equal to the sums which would be so allowable had the trustees made a disposal of the securities for the purposes of that Act at the time the chargeable event occurs.
- (3) If the chargeable event falls within section 69(1)(d) above the chargeable amount is an amount equal to the sum concerned.
- [F76 (4) If the chargeable event falls within section 69(1)(e) above the chargeable amount is an amount equal to—
- (a) the amount of the consideration received for the qualifying transfer mentioned in section 69(1)(e) above, less
- (b) the amount of any expenditure by the trustees for a qualifying purpose during the period mentioned in section 69(5A) above.]

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

Textual Amendments

- F75** Words in s. 70(2) substituted (6.3.1992 with effect as mentioned in s. 289(1)(2) of the substituting Act) by [Taxation of Chargeable Gains Act 1992 \(c. 12\)](#), ss. 289, 290, **Sch. 10 para. 19(2)** (with ss. 60, 101(1), 201(3))
- F76** S. 70(4) inserted (28.7.2000) by [2000 c. 17](#), s. 55(6)

Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C19** See [Finance Act 1990 \(c. 29\)](#) ss.31–40—.roll-over relief for disposal of assets to employee share ownership trusts

71 Further charges to tax: borrowing. U.K.

- (1) This section applies where—
 - (a) a chargeable event (within the meaning of section 69 above) occurs in relation to the trustees of an employee share ownership trust,
 - (b) at the time the event occurs anything is outstanding in respect of the principal of an amount or amounts borrowed at any time by the trustees, and
 - (c) the chargeable event is one as regards which section 72(2)(b) below applies.
- (2) In the following provisions of this section—
 - (a) “the initial chargeable event” means the event referred to in subsection (1)(a) above, and
 - (b) “the total outstanding amount” means the total amount outstanding, at the time the initial chargeable event occurs, in respect of the principal of an amount or amounts borrowed at any time by the trustees.
- (3) If any of the total outstanding amount is repaid after the initial chargeable event occurs, a further chargeable event shall occur in relation to the trustees at the end of the year of assessment in which the repayment is made.
- (4) In such a case—
 - (a) the trustees shall be treated as receiving, when the further event occurs, annual profits or gains whose amount is equal to the chargeable amount,
 - (b) the profits or gains shall be chargeable to tax under Case VI of Schedule D for the year of assessment at the end of which the further event occurs, and
 - (c) the rate at which the tax is chargeable shall be [^{F77}the rate applicable to trusts] for the year of assessment at the end of which the further event occurs.
- (5) Subject to subsection (6) below, for the purposes of subsection (4) above the chargeable amount is an amount equal to the aggregate of the total outstanding amount repaid in the year of assessment.
- (6) In a case where section 72(2)(b) below had effect in the case of the initial chargeable event, for the purposes of subsection (4) above the chargeable amount is an amount equal to the smaller of—
 - (a) the aggregate of the total outstanding amount repaid in the year of assessment, and
 - (b) an amount found by applying the formula A-B-C.
- (7) For the purposes of subsection (6) above—

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) A is the amount which would be the chargeable amount for the initial chargeable event apart from section 72(2) below,
 - (b) B is the chargeable amount for the initial chargeable event, and
 - (c) C is the amount (if any) found under subsection (8) below.
- (8) If, before the further chargeable event occurs, one or more prior chargeable events have occurred in relation to the trustees by virtue of the prior repayment of any of the total outstanding amount found for the time the initial chargeable event occurs, the amount found under this subsection is an amount equal to the chargeable amount for the prior chargeable event or to the aggregate of the chargeable amounts for the prior chargeable events (as the case may be).
- (9) In a case where—
- (a) a chargeable event (within the meaning of section 69 above) occurs in relation to the trustees in circumstances mentioned in subsection (1) above,
 - (b) a sum falls to be included in the total outstanding amount found for the time the event occurs,
 - (c) another chargeable event (within the meaning of that section) occurs in relation to the trustees in circumstances mentioned in subsection (1) above, and
 - (d) the same sum or a part of it would (apart from this subsection) fall to be included in the total outstanding amount found for the time the event occurs,
- the sum or part (as the case may be) shall not be included in the total outstanding amount found for the time the other chargeable event occurs.
- (10) In ascertaining for the purposes of this section whether a repayment is in respect of a particular amount, amounts borrowed earlier shall be taken to be repaid before amounts borrowed later.
- (11) Subsections (3) to (7) of section 68 above shall apply where tax is assessed by virtue of this section as they apply where tax is assessed by virtue of that section.

Textual Amendments

F77 Words in s. 71(4)(c) substituted (27.7.1993 with effect for the year 1993-94 and subsequent years of assessment) by 1993 c. 34, s. 79, Sch. 6 paras.20, **25(1)**

Modifications etc. (not altering text)

C20 See Finance Act 1990 (c. 29) ss.31–40—.roll-over relief for disposal of assets to employee share ownership trusts

72 Limit on chargeable amount. U.K.

- (1) For the purposes of this section each of the following is a chargeable event in relation to the trustees of an employee share ownership trust—
- (a) an event which is a chargeable event by virtue of section 69 above;
 - (b) an event which is a chargeable event by virtue of section 71 above.
- (2) If a chargeable event (the event in question) occurs in relation to the trustees of an employee share ownership trust, the following rules shall apply—

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) the amount which would (apart from this subsection) be the chargeable amount for the event in question shall be aggregated, for the purposes of paragraph (b) below, with the chargeable amounts for other chargeable events (if any) occurring in relation to the trustees before the event in question,
 - (b) if the amount which would (apart from this subsection) be the chargeable amount for the event in question (or the aggregate found under paragraph (a) above, if there is one) exceeds the deductible amount, the chargeable amount for the event in question shall be the amount it would be apart from this subsection less an amount equal to the excess, and
 - (c) section 70(2) and (3) and section 71(5) above shall have effect subject to paragraph (b) above.
- (3) For the purposes of subsection (2) above the deductible amount (as regards the event in question) is an amount equal to the total of the sums falling within subsection (4) below.
- (4) A sum falls within this subsection if it has been received by the trustees before the occurrence of the event in question and—
- (a) it has been deducted as mentioned in section 67(2)(a) above, or treated as mentioned in section 67(2)(b) above, before the occurrence of that event, or
 - (b) it would fall to be so deducted or treated if a claim for relief under section 67 above had been made immediately before the occurrence of that event.

Modifications etc. (not altering text)

C21 See [Finance Act 1990 \(c. 29\)](#) ss.31–40—*roll-over relief for disposal of assets to employee share ownership trusts*

73 Information. U.K.

- (1) An inspector may by notice in writing require a return to be made by the trustees of an employee share ownership trust if they have at any time received a sum which has been deducted as mentioned in section 67(2)(a) above or treated as mentioned in section 67(2)(b) above.
- (2) Where he requires such a return to be made the inspector shall specify the information to be contained in it.
- (3) The information which may be specified is information the inspector needs for the purposes of sections 68 to 72 above, and may include information about—
 - (a) sums received (including sums borrowed) by the trustees;
 - (b) expenditure incurred by them;
 - (c) assets acquired by them;
 - (d) transfers of assets made by them.
- (4) The information which may be required under subsection (3)(a) above may include the persons from whom the sums were received.
- (5) The information which may be required under subsection (3)(b) above may include the purpose of the expenditure and the persons receiving any sums.

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (6) The information which may be specified under subsection (3)(c) above may include the persons from whom the assets were acquired and the consideration furnished by the trustees.
- (7) The information which may be included under subsection (3)(d) above may include the persons to whom assets were transferred and the consideration furnished by them.
- (8) In a case where a sum has been deducted as mentioned in section 67(2)(a) above, or treated as mentioned in section 67(2)(b) above, the inspector shall send to the trustees to whom the payment was made a certificate stating—
 - (a) that a sum has been so deducted or so treated, and
 - (b) what sum has been so deducted or so treated.
- (9) In the Table in section 98 of the ^{M13}Taxes Management Act 1970 (penalties for failure to comply with notices etc.) at the end of the first column there shall be inserted— “Section 73 of the Finance Act 1989 ”.

Modifications etc. (not altering text)

C22 See Finance Act 1990 (c. 29) ss.31–40—*roll-over relief for disposal of assets to employee share ownership trusts*

Marginal Citations

M13 1970 c. 9.

74 Interpretation. U.K.

Schedule 5 to this Act shall have effect to determine whether, for the purposes of sections 67 to 73 above, a trust is at a particular time—

- (a) an employee share ownership trust;
- (b) a qualifying employee share ownership trust.

Modifications etc. (not altering text)

C23 See Finance Act 1990 (c. 29) ss.31–40—*roll-over relief for disposal of assets to employee share ownership trusts*

Pensions etc.

75 Retirement benefits schemes. U.K.

Schedule 6 to this Act (which relates to retirement benefits schemes) shall have effect.

76 Non-approved retirement benefits schemes. U.K.

- (1) In computing the amount of the [^{F78}profits] to be charged under Case I or Case II of Schedule D, no sum shall be deducted in respect of any expenses falling within subsection (2) or (3) below; and no expenses falling within either of those subsections shall be treated for the purposes of section 75 of the Taxes Act 1988 (investment companies) as expenses of management.

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (2) [^{F79}Subject to subsection (6A) below, expenses] fall within this subsection if—
- (a) they are expenses of providing benefits pursuant to a relevant retirement benefits scheme, and
 - (b) the benefits are not ones in respect of which a person is on receipt chargeable to income tax.
- (3) [^{F79}Subject to subsection (6A) below, expenses] fall within this subsection if—
- (a) they are expenses of paying any sum pursuant to a relevant retirement benefits scheme with a view to the provision of any benefits, and
 - (b) the sum is not one which when paid is treated as the income of a person by virtue of section 595(1) of the Taxes Act 1988 (sum paid with a view to the provision of any relevant benefits for an employee).
- (4) No sum shall be deducted in respect of any expenses falling within subsection (5) or (6) below—
- (a) in computing the amount of the [^{F78}profits] to be charged under Case I or Case II of Schedule D, or
 - (b) by virtue of section 75 of the Taxes Act 1988,
- unless the sum has actually been expended.
- (5) [^{F79}Subject to subsection (6A) below, expenses] fall within this subsection if—
- (a) they are expenses of providing benefits pursuant to a relevant retirement benefits scheme, and
 - (b) the benefits are ones in respect of which a person is on receipt chargeable to income tax.
- (6) [^{F79}Subject to subsection (6A) below, expenses] fall within this subsection if—
- (a) they are expenses of paying any sum pursuant to a relevant retirement benefits scheme with a view to the provision of any benefits, and
 - (b) the sum is one which when paid is treated as the income of a person by virtue of section 595(1) of the Taxes Act 1988.
- [^{F80}(6A) Expenses to which subsection (6B) or (6C) below applies shall be treated as not falling within any of subsections (2), (3), (5) or (6) above.
- (6B) This subsection applies to expenses of paying any sum, or of providing benefits, pursuant to a superannuation fund which satisfies the requirements of section 615(6) of the Taxes Act 1988.
- (6C) This subsection applies to expenses of paying any sum, or of providing benefits, pursuant to a retirement benefits scheme which is established outside the United Kingdom and which the Board are satisfied corresponds to such a scheme as is mentioned in paragraphs (a), (b) or (c) of section 596(1) of the Taxes Act 1988, where the expenses are incurred for the benefit of:
- (a) employees whose emoluments are foreign emoluments within the meaning of section 192 of the Taxes Act 1988; or
 - (b) employees who are not resident in the United Kingdom and whose duties are performed wholly outside the United Kingdom (and for this purpose duties performed in the United Kingdom the performance of which is merely incidental to the performance of other duties outside the United Kingdom shall be treated as performed outside the United Kingdom).]

(7) In this section—

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

“retirement benefits scheme” has the same meaning as in Chapter I of Part XIV of the Taxes Act 1988, and

references to a relevant retirement benefits scheme are references to a retirement benefits scheme which is not of a description mentioned in section 596(1)(a), (b) or (c) of the Taxes Act 1988.

- (8) This section has effect in relation to expenses incurred on or after the day on which this Act is passed.

Textual Amendments

- F78** Words in s. 76(1)(4)(a) substituted (31.7.1998) by 1998 c. 36, s. 46(3), **Sch. 7 para. 3**
- F79** Words in s. 76(2)(3)(5)(6) substituted (29.4.1996 with effect as mentioned in **Sch. 39 para. 2(4)** of the amending Act) by 1996 c. 8, s. 201, **Sch. 39 Pt. I para. 2(2)**
- F80** S. 76(6A)-(6C) inserted (29.4.1996 with effect as mentioned in **Sch. 39 para. 2(4)** of the amending Act) by 1996 c. 8, s. 201, **Sch. 39 Pt. I para. 2(3)**

Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C24** S. 76 applied (31.7.1998 with effect as mentioned in s. 38(2)(3) of the 1998 c. 36) by 1988 c. 1, s. **21A(2)** (as substituted by 1998 c. 36, s. 38(1), **Sch. 5 Pt. I paras. 4, 73**)

77 Personal pension schemes. **U.K.**

Schedule 7 to this Act (which relates to personal pension schemes) shall have effect.

Unit trusts etc.

78, 79. ^{F81} **U.K.**

Textual Amendments

- F81** Ss. 78, 79 repealed by Finance Act 1990 (c. 29, SIF 58), s.132, **Sch. 19 Pt. IV** Note

^{F82}80 **U.K.**

Textual Amendments

- F82** S. 80 repealed (31.7.1998) by 1998 c. 36, s. 165, **Sch. 27 Pt. III(23)**

81 Offshore funds operating equalisation arrangements. **U.K.**

- (1) In section 758 of the Taxes Act 1988 (offshore funds operating equalisation arrangements) in subsection (6) (reference to section 78 of the ^{M14} Capital Gains Tax Act 1979 not to include reference to it as applied by section 82) for the words “but not” there shall be substituted the words “and a reference to section 78”.

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (2) This section shall apply where a conversion of securities occurs on or after 14th March 1989; and “conversion of securities” here has the same meaning as in section 82 of the Capital Gains Tax Act 1979.

Marginal Citations

M14 1979 c. 14.

Life assurance

82 Calculation of profits. U.K.

- (1) Where the profits of an insurance company in respect of its life assurance business are, for the purposes of the Taxes Act 1988, computed in accordance with the provisions of that Act applicable to Case I of Schedule D, then, in calculating the profits for any period of account,—

- (a) there shall be taken into account as an expense (so far as not so taken into account apart from this section) any amounts which [^{F83}are allocated to, [^{F84}and any amounts of tax ^{F85} . . . which are expended on behalf of], policy holders or annuitants in respect of the period]; and
- (b) if, at the end of the period, the company has an unappropriated surplus on valuation, as shown in [^{F86}the return deposited with the Financial Services Authority under section 9.6 of the Prudential Sourcebook (Insurers)], then, subject to subsection (3) below, the closing liabilities of the period may include such amount, forming part of that surplus, as is required to meet the reasonable expectations of policyholders or annuitants with regard to bonuses or other additions to benefit of a discretionary nature.

[^{F87}(1A) In subsection (1)(b) above “the Prudential Sourcebook (Insurers)” means the Interim Prudential Sourcebook for Insurers made by the Financial Services Authority under the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000.]

- (2) For the purposes of this section an amount is allocated to policy holders or annuitants if, and only if,—
- (a) bonus payments are made to them; or
 - (b) reversionary bonuses are declared in their favour or a reduction is made in the premiums payable by them;

and the amount of the allocation is, in a case within paragraph (a) above, the amount of the payments and, in a case within paragraph (b) above, the amount of the liabilities assumed by the company in consequence of the declaration or reduction.

- (3) The amount which, apart from this subsection, would be included in the closing liabilities of a period of account by virtue of subsection (1)(b) above shall be reduced or, as the case may be, extinguished by deducting there from the total of the amounts which—

- (a) for periods of account ending before 14th March 1989 have been excluded, by virtue of section 433 of the Taxes Act 1988, as being reserved for policyholders or annuitants, and

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (b) have not before that date either been allocated to or expended on behalf of policy holders or annuitants or been treated as profits of an accounting period on ceasing to be so reserved.
- (4) Where the closing liabilities of a period of account include an amount by virtue of subsection (1)(b) above, the like amount shall be included in the opening liabilities of the next following period of account.
- (5) This section has effect with respect to periods of account ending on or after 14th March 1989; and the following provisions of this section shall apply for the purposes of the application of this section to any such period which begins before that date (in this section referred to as a “straddling period”).
- (6) For the purposes referred to in subsection (5) above, it shall be assumed that the straddling period consists of two separate periods of account,—
- (a) the first beginning at the beginning of the straddling period and ending on 13th March 1989 (in this section referred to as “the first notional period”); and
- (b) the second beginning on 14th March 1989 and ending at the end of the straddling period (in this section referred to as “the second notional period”);
- and any reference in subsection (7) or subsection (8) below to a time apportionment is a reference to an apportionment made by reference to the respective lengths of the two notional periods.
- (7) To determine the profits of the first notional period and the amount excluded from the profits of that period by virtue of section 433 of the Taxes Act 1988 as being reserved for policy holders or annuitants,—
- (a) in the first instance the profits of the straddling period and the amount so excluded from those profits shall be computed as if subsections (1) to (4) above did not apply with respect to any part of the straddling period; and
- (b) there shall then be determined that part of the profits and the amount computed under paragraph (a) above which, on a time apportionment, is properly attributable to the first notional period.
- (8) To determine the profits of the second notional period,—
- (a) in the first instance the profits of the straddling period shall be computed as if subsections (1) to (4) above applied to the whole of the straddling period; and
- (b) there shall then be determined that part of the profits computed under paragraph (a) above which, on a time apportionment, is properly attributable to the second notional period.

Textual Amendments

- F83** [Finance Act 1990 \(c. 29\)](#) s. 43(1)(3)—*deemed always to have had effect. Previously* “, in respect of the period, are allocated to or expended on behalf of policy holders or annuitants”
- F84** *Words*
“any any amounts of tax which are expended on behalf of”
omitted when s.82(1)(2)(4) and s. 83 *applied to profits chargeable under Schedule D* (see [Income and Corporation Taxes Act 1988 \(c. 1, SIF 63:1\)](#) s. 441 (as amended (28.7.2000 with effect in relation to periods of account beginning on or after 1.4.2000) by [2000 c. 17, s. 103, Sch. 30 para. 18\(3\)\(4\)](#))
- F85** Words in [s. 82\(1\)\(a\)](#) repealed (28.7.2000 with effect in relation to periods of account beginning on or after 1.4.2000) by [2000 c. 17, ss. 103, 156, Sch. 30 para. 18\(2\)\(4\), Sch. 40 Pt. II\(13\)](#), Note

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- F86** Words in s. 82(1)(b) substituted (1.12.2001 with effect as mentioned in s. 55(4) of the amending S.I.) by S.I. 2001/3629, **art. 55(2)**
- F87** S. 82(1A) inserted (1.12.2001 with effect as mentioned in s. 55(4) of the amending S.I.) by S.I. 2001/3629, **art. 55(3)**

Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C25** S. 82 modified (31.7.1992 with effect for accounting periods beginning on and after 1.1.1990) by S.I. 1992/1655, **regs. 1, 17**
 S. 82 modified (23.3.1999 with effect with respect to accounting periods of insurance companies ending on or after 1.7.1999) by S.I. 1999/498, **regs. 1, 10**
- C26** S. 82 subs. (1)(2) and (4) and s. 83 apply to profits chargeable under Schedule D (see **Income and Corporation Taxes Act 1988 (c. 1, SIF 63:1), s. 441**)
 S. 82(1)(2)(4) applied (with modifications) (1.5.1995) by 1988 c. 1, **s. 439B(3)(a)** (as inserted (1.5.1995) by 1998 c. 36, s. 51, Sch. 8 Pt. 1 para. 27(1) (with Sch. 8 paras. 55(2), 57(1)))
- C27** See S.I. 1989/2417, **reg. 5** (in Part III Vol.5) for modification applicable to life or endowment business carried on by registered friendly societies (but S.I. 1989/2417 was revoked (31.7.1992) by S.I. 1992/1655, **regs. 1, 22** and deemed never to have had effect).

[^{F88}83 Receipts to be brought into account. U.K.]

- (1) The following provisions of this section have effect where the profits of an insurance company in respect of its life assurance business are, for the purposes of the Taxes Act 1988, computed in accordance with the provisions of that Act applicable to Case I of Schedule D.
- (2) So far as referable to that business, the following items, as brought into account for a period of account (and not otherwise), shall be taken into account as receipts of the period—
- (a) the company's investment income from the assets of its [^{F89}long-term insurance] fund, and
 - (b) any increase in value (whether realised or not) of those assets.

If for any period of account there is a reduction in the value referred to in paragraph (b) above (as brought into account for the period), that reduction shall be taken into account as an expense of that period.

[In ascertaining whether or to what extent a company has incurred a loss in respect

^{F90}(3) of that business in a case where an amount is added to the company's [^{F89}long-term insurance] fund as part of or in connection with—

- (a) a transfer of business to the company, or
- (b) a demutualisation of the company not involving a transfer of business,

that amount shall (subject to subsection (4) below) be taken into account, for the period for which it is brought into account, as an increase in value of the assets of that fund within subsection (2)(b) above.

^{F90}(4) Subsection (3) above does not apply where, or to the extent that, the amount concerned—

- (a) would fall to be taken into account as a receipt apart from this section,
- (b) is taken into account under subsection (2) above otherwise than by virtue of subsection (3) above, or
- (c) is specifically exempted from tax.

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

^{F90}(5) Any amount which is to be taken into account pursuant to subsection (3) above for a period of account shall be so taken into account—

- (a) after the making of any reduction under subsection (6) of section 83AA below in relation to that period, but
- (b) before the making of any reduction under subsection (3) of that section in relation to an accounting period of the company ending in or with that period.

^{F90}(6) In subsection (3) above “transfer of business” means—

- [a transfer, under an insurance business transfer scheme, of business which
- ^{F91}(a) consists of the effecting or carrying out of contracts of long-term insurance;]
- (b) a qualifying overseas transfer, within the meaning of paragraph 4A of Schedule 19AC to the Taxes Act 1988; or
- (c) the making of a contract of reinsurance which, in whole or in part, constitutes or forms part of a total reinsurance by the reinsured, unless the reinsurer under the contract falls within section 439A of the Taxes Act 1988 (pure reinsurance).

[In subsection (6)(a) above—
^{F92}(6A)

“insurance business transfer scheme” means a scheme falling within section 105 of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000, including an excluded scheme falling within Case 2, 3 or 4 of subsection (3) of that section;

“contracts of long-term insurance” means contracts which fall within Part II of Schedule 1 to the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001.]

(7) For the purposes of subsection (3)(a) above, a transfer of business falling within subsection (6)(c) above shall be treated as a transfer of business to the company which is the reinsurer under the contract of reinsurance.

^{F90}(8) In this section—

“add”, in relation to an amount and a company’s [^{F93}long-term insurance] fund, includes transfer (whether from other assets of the company or otherwise);

“demutualisation” means the conversion, under the law of any territory, of a company which has been carrying on insurance business without having a share capital into a company with a share capital, without any change of legal personality;

“total reinsurance” means the reinsurance (whether effected by a single contract of reinsurance or by two or more such contracts, taken together, whether or not made with the same reinsurer) of the whole, or substantially the whole, of the reinsured’s risk—

- (a) under policies of a particular description issued in respect of insurances made in the course of carrying on life assurance business before the making of the contract of reinsurance (or, in a case where there are two or more contracts of reinsurance, the last of them); or
- (b) under contracts of a particular description so made.]

This subsection does not apply where, or to the extent that, the amount concerned—

- (a) would fall to be taken into account as a receipt apart from this section,

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (b) is otherwise taken into account under subsection (2) above, or
(c) is specifically exempted from tax.]

Textual Amendments

- F88** Ss. 83, 83A substituted for s. 83 (1.5.1995) by 1995 c. 4, s. 51, **Sch. 8 Pt. I para. 16(1)** (with Sch. 8 paras. 55(2), 57(1))
- F89** Words in s. 83(2)(a)(3) substituted (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/329, **art. 60(1)(a)**
- F90** S. 83(3)-(8) substituted for s. 83(3) (29.4.1996 with effect as mentioned in Sch. 31 para. 10(2) of the amending Act) by 1996 c. 8, s. 163, **Sch. 31 para. 4**
- F91** S. 83(6)(a) substituted (1.12.2001 with effect as mentioned in art. 56(4) of the amending S.I.) by S.I. 2001/3629, **art. 56(2)**
- F92** S. 83(6A) inserted (1.12.2001 with effect as mentioned in art. 56(4) of the amending S.I.) by S.I. 2001/3629, **art. 56(3)**
- F93** Words in the definition of “add” in s. 83(8) substituted (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/3629, **art. 60(1)(a)**

Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C28** S. 83 applied (1.5.1995) by 1988 c. 1, s. 439B(3)(a) (as inserted (1.5.1995) by 1995 c. 4, s. 51, Sch. 8 Pt. I para. 27(1) (with Sch. 8 paras. 55(2), 57(1)))
S. 83 modified (*retrospective* to 1.1.1995) by S.I. 1997/473, **regs. 1(2), 33, 34**
- C29** S. 83(2) applied (1.5.1995) by 1998 c. 1, s. 432E (as amended (1.5.1995) by 1995 c. 4, s. 51, **Sch. 8 Pt. I para. 16(3)**) (with ss. 55(2), 57(1))
- C30** S. 83(6) modified (*retrospective* to 1.1.1996) by S.I. 1997/743, **regs. 1(2), 35** (as amended (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/3629, **arts. 160, 165(1)(b)**)

[^{F94}83A Meaning of “brought into account”. **U.K.**

- (1) [^{F95}In sections 83 to 83AB]“brought into account” means brought into account in an account which is recognised for the purposes of [^{F96}those sections].
- (2) Subject to the following provisions of this section and to any regulations made by the Treasury, the accounts recognised for the purposes of [^{F97}those sections] are—
- a revenue account prepared for the purposes of [^{F98}Chapter 9 of the Prudential Sourcebook (Insurers)] in respect of the whole of the company’s [^{F99}long-term] business;
 - any separate revenue account required to be prepared [^{F100}under that Chapter] in respect of a part of that business.

[^{F101}In paragraph (a) [^{F102}above]“the Prudential Sourcebook (Insurers)” means the Interim Prudential Sourcebook for Insurers made by the Financial Services Authority under the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000.][^{F103}Paragraph (b) above does not include accounts required in respect of internal linked funds.]

- (3) Where there are prepared any such separate accounts as are mentioned in subsection (2)(b) above, reference shall be made to those accounts rather than to the account for the whole of the business.
- (4) If in any such case the total of the items brought into account in the separate accounts is not equal to the total amount brought into account in the account prepared for the whole business, there shall be treated as having been required and prepared a further separate revenue account covering the balance.

^{F104}(5)]

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

Textual Amendments

- F94** SS. 83, 83A substituted for s. 83 (1.5.1995) by 1995 c. 4, s. 51, **Sch. 8 Pt. I para. 16(1)** (with **Sch. 8 paras. 55(2), 57(1)**)
- F95** Words in s. 83A(1) substituted (29.4.1996 with effect as mentioned in **Sch. 31 para. 10(2)** of the amending Act) by 1996 c. 8, s. 163, **Sch. 31 para. 6(1)(a)**
- F96** Words in s. 83A(1) substituted (29.4.1996 with effect as mentioned in **Sch. 31 para. 10(2)** of the amending Act) by 1996 c. 8, s. 163, **Sch. 31 para. 6(1)(b)**
- F97** Words in s. 83A(2) substituted (29.4.1996 with effect as mentioned in **Sch. 31 para. 10(2)** of the amending Act) by 1996 c. 8, s. 163, **Sch. 31 para. 6(2)**
- F98** Words in s. 83A(2)(a) substituted (1.12.2001 with effect as mentioned in **art. 57(2)** of the amending Act) by **S.I. 2001/3629, art. 57(1)(a)**
- F99** Words in s. 83A(2)(a) substituted (1.12.2001) by **S.I. 2001/3629, art. 60(2)(a)**
- F100** Words in s. 83A(2)(b) substituted (1.12.2001 with effect as mentioned in **art. 57(2)** of the amending Act) by **S.I. 2001/3629, art. 57(1)(b)**
- F101** Words in s. 83A(2) substituted (1.12.2001 with effect as mentioned in **art. 57(2)** of the amending S.I.) by **S.I. 2001/3629, art. 57(1)(c)**
- F102** Word in s. 83A(2) inserted (2.7.2002) by **S.I. 2002/1409, art. 3(a)**
- F103** Words in s. 83A(2) added (2.7.2002) by **S.I. 2002/1409, art. 3(b)**
- F104** S. 83A(5) repealed (1.1.1996) by 1996 c. 8, s. 205, **Sch. 41 Pt. V(26)**, note

Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C31** S. 83A modified (*retrospective to 1.1.1995*) by **S.I. 1997/473, regs. 1(2), 36, 37**

[^{F105}83A] Amounts added to [^{F106}long term insurance] fund of a company in excess of that company's loss. **U.K.**

- (1) If one or more relevant amounts are brought into account for a period of account of a company and either—
- the aggregate of those amounts exceeds the loss which, after the making of any reduction under subsection (6) below but before any application of section 83(3) above in relation to that period, would have arisen to the company in that period in respect of its life assurance business, or
 - no such loss would have so arisen,
- the surplus for that period shall be applied in accordance with the following provisions of this section and section 83AB below.

- (2) In this section—

“relevant amount” means so much of any amount which is added to the [^{F107}long-term insurance] fund of a company as mentioned in subsection (3) of section 83 above as does not fall within any of the paragraphs of subsection (4) of that section;

“surplus”, in relation to a period of account of a company, means (subject to section 83AB(2) below)—

- if the aggregate of the relevant amounts brought into account for that period exceeds the amount of any loss which, after the making of any reduction under subsection (6) below but before any application of section 83(3) above in relation to that period, would have arisen to the company in that period in respect of its life assurance business, the amount of the excess; or

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (b) if no such loss would have so arisen, the aggregate of the relevant amounts brought into account for that period.
- (3) Where, apart from section 83AB(2) below, there is a surplus for a period of account of a company for which there are brought into account one or more relevant amounts which were added to the company's [^{F106}long-term insurance] fund as part of, or in connection with, a particular transfer of business, the appropriate portion of the surplus for that period shall be treated as reducing (but not below nil) so much of any loss arising to the transferor company in the relevant accounting period as, on a just and reasonable apportionment of the loss, is referable to the business which is the subject of that particular transfer.
- (4) For the purposes of subsection (3) above, the appropriate portion of the surplus for a period of account of a company is, in the case of any particular transfer of business, the amount which bears to that surplus (apart from any additions by virtue of section 83AB(2) below) the proportion which A bears to B, where—
- A is the aggregate of such of the relevant amounts added to the company's [^{F106}long-term insurance] fund as part of, or in connection with, that particular transfer of business as are brought into account for that period, and
- B is the aggregate of the relevant amounts brought into account for that period.
- (5) Any reduction pursuant to subsection (3) above of the loss arising to the transferor company in the relevant accounting period shall be made after—
- (a) the making of any reduction under subsection (6) below, and
- (b) any application of section 83(3) above,
- in relation to the period of account of that company in which falls the date of the particular transfer of business in question.
- (6) Any loss arising to a company in respect of its life assurance business in a period of account subsequent to one for which there is a surplus shall be reduced (but not below nil) by so much of that surplus as cannot be applied—
- (a) under subsection (3) above;
- (b) under this subsection, in the reduction of a loss arising to the company in an earlier period of account; or
- (c) under section 83AB below, in relation to a transfer of business from the company in that or any earlier period of account.
- (7) Any reduction pursuant to subsection (6) above of a loss arising to a company in a period of account shall be made—
- (a) before any application of section 83(3) above in relation to that period, and
- (b) if the company is also the transferor company in relation to a particular transfer of business, before the making of any reduction under subsection (3) above in relation to that one of its accounting periods which is the relevant accounting period in relation to that transfer.
- (8) A surplus in respect of an earlier period of account shall be applied under subsection (6) above before a surplus in respect of a later period of account.
- (9) All such adjustments to the liability to tax of any person shall be made, whether by assessment or otherwise, as may be required to give effect to this section.
- (10) In this section—
- “add” has the same meaning as in section 83 above;

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

“the relevant accounting period” means the accounting period of the transferor company which—

- (a) ends on the date of the transfer of business mentioned in subsection (3) above, or
- (b) if that transfer of business falls within section 83(6)(c) above and no accounting period of the transferor company ends on that date, ends next after that date;

“transfer of business” has the same meaning as in section 83(3) above;

“the transferor company” means the company from which the transfer of business mentioned in subsection (3) above is effected.

- (11) A transfer of business falling within section 83(6)(c) above shall be treated for the purposes of this section as a transfer of business from the company which is the reinsured under the contract of reinsurance.]

Textual Amendments

F105 Ss. 83AA, 83AB inserted (29.4.1996 with effect as mentioned in Sch. 31 paras. 9(1), 10(2) of the amending Act) by 1996 c. 8, s. 163, **Sch. 31 para. 5**

F106 Words in s. 83AA(3)(4) and the sidenote substituted (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/3629, **art. 60(1)(b)**

F107 Words in the definition of “relevant amount” in s. 83AA(2) substituted (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/3629, **art. 60(1)(b)**

Modifications etc. (not altering text)

C32 S. 83AA modified (29.4.1996) by 1996 c. 8, s. 163, **Sch. 31 para. 9(1)**

C33 S. 83AA restricted (29.4.1996) by 1996 c. 8, s. 163, **Sch. 31 para. 9(3)**

[^{F108}83AB] Treatment of surplus where there is a subsequent transfer of business from the company etc. **U.K.**

- (1) If an amount is added to the [^{F109}long-term insurance] fund of a company as part of or in connection with a transfer of business to the company, or a demutualisation of the company not involving a transfer of business, and—
 - (a) there is a surplus for the period of account of the company for which that amount is brought into account,
 - (b) at any time after the transfer of business or demutualisation, there is a transfer of business from the company (the “subsequent transfer”), and
 - (c) at the end of the relevant period of account there remains at least some of the surplus mentioned in paragraph (a) above which cannot be applied—
 - (i) under subsection (3) of section 83AA above,
 - (ii) under subsection (6) of that section, in the reduction of a loss arising to the company in an earlier period of account, or
 - (iii) under this section, in relation to an earlier subsequent transfer,so much of the surplus falling within paragraph (c) above as, on a just and reasonable apportionment, is referable to business which is the subject of the subsequent transfer shall be applied under this section.
- (2) An amount of surplus which is to be applied under this section shall be so applied by being treated as an amount of surplus (additional to any other amounts of surplus)

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

for the period of account of the transferee company which last precedes the period of account of that company in which the subsequent transfer is effected, whether or not there is in fact any such preceding period of account.

- (3) If, in a case where an amount is treated under subsection (2) above as an amount of surplus for a period of account of a company, the period is not one for which there is brought into account an amount added to the company's [^{F109}long-term insurance] fund in connection with the subsequent transfer, subsection (1) above shall have effect in relation to any transfer of business from the company subsequent to that transfer as if an amount had been so added and had been brought into account for that period.
- (4) Any question as to what is a just and reasonable apportionment in any case for the purposes of subsection (1) above shall be determined by the Special Commissioners who shall determine the question in the same manner as they determine appeals; but any person affected by the apportionment shall be entitled to appear and be heard or make representations in writing.
- (5) A surplus in respect of an earlier period of account shall be applied under this section before a surplus in respect of a later period of account.
- (6) All such adjustments to the liability to tax of any person shall be made, whether by assessment or otherwise, as may be required to give effect to this section.
- (7) In this section—
- “add” has the same meaning as in section 83 above;
 - “demutualisation” has the same meaning as in section 83 above;
 - “the relevant period of account” means the period of account of the company from which the subsequent transfer is effected which consists of or includes the accounting period of that company which—
 - (a) ends with the day on which the subsequent transfer is effected; or
 - (b) if the subsequent transfer is a transfer of business falling within section 83(6)(c) above and no accounting period of the company ends on that day, ends next after that day;
 - “surplus” has the same meaning as in section 83AA above;
 - “transfer of business” has the same meaning as in section 83(3) above;
 - “transferee company” means the company to which the subsequent transfer of business is effected.
- (8) Where it is necessary for any purpose of this section to identify the time at which a demutualisation of a company takes place, that time shall be taken to be the time when the company first issues shares.
- (9) A transfer of business falling within section 83(6)(c) above shall be treated for the purposes of this section as a transfer of business from the company which is the reinsured under the contract of reinsurance to the company which is the reinsurer under that contract.]

Textual Amendments

F108 SS. 83AA, 83AB inserted (29.4.1996 with effect as mentioned in Sch. 31 paras. 9(1), 10(2) of the amending Act) by 1996 c. 8, s. 163, **Sch. 31 para. 5**

F109 Words in s. 83AB(1)(3) substituted (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/3629, **art. 60(1)(c)**

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

Modifications etc. (not altering text)

C34 S. 83AB modified (29.4.1996) by 1996 c. 8, s. 163, Sch. 31 para. 9(1)

84 Interpretation of sections 85 to 89 and further provisions about insurance companies. U.K.

[^{F110}(1) In sections 85 to 89 below “basic life assurance and general annuity business” has the same meaning as in Chapter I of Part XII of the Taxes Act 1988.]

(2) Any reference in the sections referred to in subsection (1) above or the following provisions of this section to a straddling period is a reference to an accounting period which begins before 1st January 1990 and ends on or after that date.

(3) For the purposes of the sections referred to in subsection (1) above and for the purposes of subsection (5)(b) below it shall be assumed that a straddling period consists of two separate accounting periods—

- (a) the first beginning at the beginning of the straddling period and ending on 31st December 1989; and
- (b) the second beginning on 1st January 1990 and ending at the end of the straddling period;

and in those sections and subsection (5)(b) below the first of those two notional accounting periods is referred to as “the 1989 component period” and the second is referred to as “the 1990 component period”.

(4) Chapter I of Part XII of the Taxes Act 1988 (insurance companies) shall have effect subject to the amendments in Schedule 8 to this Act, being—

- (a) amendments relating to franked investment income, loss relief and group relief; and
- (b) amendments consequential on or supplemental to sections 82 and 83 above and sections 85 to 89 below.

(5) Subject to subsection (6) below, in Schedule 8 to this Act,—

- (a) paragraphs 2 and 6 shall be deemed to have come into force on 14th March 1989; and
- (b) the remainder shall have effect with respect to accounting periods beginning on or after 1st January 1990 (including the 1990 component period).

(6) Nothing in subsection (5) above affects the operation, by virtue of any provision of sections 82 and 83 above and sections 85 to 89 below, of any enactment repealed or amended by Schedule 8 to this Act and, so long as the provisions of that Schedule do not have effect in relation to sections 434 and 435 of the Taxes Act 1988, nothing in subsection (5)(a) above affects the continuing operation of section 433 of that Act for the purpose only of determining the fraction of the profits referred to in subsection (6) of section 434 and subsection (1)(b) of section 435.

Textual Amendments

F110 S. 84(1) substituted (for accounting periods beginning on or after 01.01.1992) by Finance Act 1991 (c. 31, SIF 63:1), s. 48, Sch. 7 paras. 11, 18

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

85 Charge of certain receipts of basic life assurance business. **U.K.**

- (1) Subject to subsection (2) below, where the profits of an insurance company in respect of its life assurance business are not charged under Case I of Schedule D, there shall be chargeable under Case VI of that Schedule any receipts referable to the company's [^{F111}basic life assurance and general annuity business]—
- (a) which, if those profits were charged under Case I of Schedule D, would betaken into account in computing those profits; and
 - (b) which would not be within the charge to tax (except under Case I of Schedule D) apart from this section;
- and for the purposes of paragraph (a) above, the provisions of section 83 above as to the manner in which any item is to be taken into account shall be disregarded.
- (2) The receipts referred to in subsection (1) above do not include—
- (a) any premium; or
 - (b) any sum received by virtue of a claim under an insurance contract(including a re-insurance contract); or
 - (c) any repayment or refund (in whole or in part) of a sum disbursed by the company as acquisition expenses falling within paragraphs (a) to (c) of subsection (1) of section 86 below; or
 - [^{F112}(ca) any reinsurance commission; or]
 - (d) any sum which is taken into account under section 76(1)(a) of the Taxes Act 1988 as a deduction from the amount treated as expenses of management of the company; or
 - (e) any sum which is not within the charge to tax (except under Case I of Schedule D) because of an exemption from tax.
- (3) This section has effect with respect to the receipts of accounting periods beginning on or after 1st January 1990 (including the 1990 component period).

Textual Amendments

F111 Words in s. 85(1) substituted(*for accounting periods beginning on or after 01.01.1992*) by [Finance Act 1991 \(c. 31, SIF 63:1\)](#), s. 48, Sch. 7 paras.12, 18.

F112 [Finance Act 1990 \(c. 29\)](#), s. 44(1)(4)—*deemedalways to have had effect*

Modifications etc. (not altering text)

C35 S. 85(1) modified (*retrospective to 1.1.1995*) by [S.I. 1997/473](#), [regs. 1\(2\)](#), 38

86 Spreading of relief for acquisition expenses. **U.K.**

- (1) For the purposes of this section, the acquisition expenses for any period of an insurance company carrying on life assurance business are such of the following expenses of management as are for that period attributable to the company's [^{F113}basic life assurance and general annuity business],—
- (a) commissions (however described), other than commissions [^{F114}for persons who collect premiums from house to house],
 - (b) any other expenses of management which are disbursed solely for the purpose of the acquisition of business, and

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (c) so much of any other expenses of management which are disbursed partly for the purpose of the acquisition of business and partly for other purposes as are properly attributable to the acquisition of business,

[^{F115}reduced by the items specified in subsection (1A) below.]

[^{F116}(1A) Those items are—

- (a) the appropriate portion of any deduction falling to be made under paragraph (aa) of subsection (1) of section 76 of the Taxes Act 1988 for the period in question;
- (b) any such repayments or refunds falling within paragraph (c) of that subsection as are received in that period;
- (c) any reinsurance commissions falling within paragraph (ca) of that subsection.

(1B) For the purposes of paragraph (a) of subsection (1A) above, “the appropriate portion” of the deduction there mentioned is the amount which bears to the whole of that deduction the proportion which the acquisition expenses, without making the reduction required by subsection (1) above, would bear to the whole of the expenses of management, without making the deductions required by paragraphs (aa), (a), (c) and (ca) of section 76(1) of the Taxes Act 1988.]

(2) The exclusion from paragraph (a) of subsection (1) above of commissions [^{F117}for persons who collect premiums from house to house] shall not prevent such commissions constituting expenses of management for the purposes of paragraph (b) or paragraph (c) of that subsection.

(3) Nothing in subsections (1) and (2) above applies to commissions (however described) in respect of insurances made before 14th March 1989, but without prejudice to the application of those subsections to any commission attributable to a variation on or after that date in a policy issued in respect of an insurance made before that date; and, for this purpose, the exercise of any rights conferred by a policy shall be regarded as a variation of it.

[^{F118}(3A) Nothing in subsection (1), (2) or (3) above applies to commissions (however described) in respect of annuity contracts made in accounting periods beginning before 1st January 1992, but without prejudice to the application of subsections (1) and (2) above to any commission attributable to a variation, in an accounting period beginning on or after that date, of an annuity contract so made; and for this purpose the exercise of any rights conferred by an annuity contract shall be regarded as a variation of it.]

(4) In subsection (1) above “the acquisition of business” includes

- [^{F119}(a)] the securing on or after 14th March 1989 of the payment of increased or additional premiums in respect of a policy of insurance issued in respect of an insurance already made (whether before, on or after that date) [^{F120}and
- (b) the securing, in an accounting period beginning on or after 1st January 1992, of the payment of increased or additional consideration in respect of an annuity contract already made (whether in an accounting period beginning before, or on or after, that date)].

(5) In relation to any period, the expenses of management attributable to a company's [^{F113}basic life assurance and general annuity business] are expenses—

- (a) which are disbursed for that period (disregarding any treated as so disbursed by section 75(3) of the Taxes Act 1988); and
- (b) which, disregarding subsection (6) below, are deductible as expenses of management in accordance with sections 75 and 76 of the Taxes Act 1988.

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- [^{F121}(5A) References in this section to expenses of management do not include any amounts treated as additional expenses of management [^{F122}under section 256(2)(a) of the Capital Allowances Act (giving effect to capital allowances referable to basic life assurance and general annuity business of company carrying on life assurance business)].]
- (6) Notwithstanding anything in sections 75 and 76 of the Taxes Act 1988 but subject to subsection (7) below, only one-seventh of the acquisition expenses for any accounting period (in this section referred to as “the base period”) shall be treated as deductible under those sections for the base period, and in subsections (8) and (9) below any reference to the full amount of the acquisition expenses for the base period is a reference to the amount of those expenses which would be deductible for that period apart from this subsection.
- (7) In the case of the acquisition expenses for an accounting period or part of an accounting period falling wholly within 1990, subsection (6) above shall have effect as if for “one-seventh” there were substituted “five-sevenths”; and, in the case of the acquisition expenses for an accounting period or part of an accounting period falling wholly within 1991, 1992 or 1993, the corresponding substitution shall be “four-sevenths”, “three-sevenths” or “two-sevenths” respectively.
- (8) Where, by virtue of subsection (6) (and, where appropriate, subsection(7)) above, only a fraction of the full amount of the acquisition expenses for the base period is deductible under sections 75 and 76 of the Taxes Act 1988 for that period, then, subject to subsection (9) below, a further one-seventh of the full amount shall be so deductible for each succeeding accounting period after the base period until the whole of the full amount has become so deductible, except that, for any accounting period of less than a year, the fraction of one-seventh shall be proportionately reduced.
- (9) For any accounting period for which the fraction of the full amount of the acquisition expenses for the base period which would otherwise be deductible in accordance with subsection (8) above exceeds the balance of those expenses which has not become deductible for earlier accounting periods, only that balance shall be deductible.
- (10) This section has effect for accounting periods beginning on or after 1st January 1990 (including the 1990 component period).

Textual Amendments

- F113** Words in s. 86(1) and (5) substituted (*for accounting periods beginning on or after 01.01.1992*) by Finance Act 1991 (c. 31, SIF 63:1), s. 48, Sch. 7 paras. 13(1), **18**.
- F114** Words in s. 86(1)(a) substituted (29.4.1996 with effect in relation to accounting periods beginning on or after 1.1.1996) by 1996 c. 8, s. 167(3)(a)(10)
- F115** Words in s. 86(1) substituted (29.4.1996 with effect as mentioned in Sch. 31 para. 10(1)) by 1996 c. 8, s. 163, Sch. 31 para. 3(1)
- F116** S. 86(1A)(1B) inserted (29.4.1996 with effect as mentioned in Sch. 31 para. 10(1)) by 1996 c. 8, s. 163, Sch. 31 para. 3(2)
- F117** Words in s. 86(2) substituted (29.4.1996 with effect in relation to accounting periods beginning on or after 1.1.1996) by 1996 c. 8, s. 167(3)(b)(10)
- F118** S. 86(3A) inserted (*for accounting periods beginning on or after 01.01.1992*) by Finance Act 1991 (c. 31, SIF 63:1), s. 48, Sch. 7 paras. 13(2), **18**.
- F119** S. 86(4)(a) inserted (*for accounting periods beginning on or after 01.01.1992*) by Finance Act 1991 (c. 31, SIF 63:1), s. 48, Sch. 7 paras. 13(3), **18**.

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- F120** S. 86(4)(b) and word preceding it inserted (for accounting periods beginning on or after 01.01.1992) by Finance Act 1991 (c. 31, SIF 63:1), s. 48, Sch. 7 paras. 13(3), 18.
- F121** S. 86(5A) inserted (1.5.1995) by 1995 c. 4, s. 51, Sch. 8 Pt. 1 para. 23(3) (with Sch. 8 paras. 55(2), 57(1))
- F122** Words in s. 86(5A) substituted (22.3.2001 with effect as mentioned in s. 579(1) of the amending Act) by 2001 c. 2, s. 578, Sch. 2 para. 70

Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C36** S. 86 modified (retrospective to 1.1.1995) by S.I. 1997/473, regs. 1(2), 39

87 Management expenses. U.K.

- (1) Section 76 of the Taxes Act 1988 shall be amended in accordance with subsections (2) and (3) below.
- (2) In subsection (1), after paragraph (b) there shall be inserted “and
- (c) there shall be deducted from the amount treated as the expenses of management for any accounting period any repayment or refund (in whole or in part) of a sum disbursed by the company (for that or any earlier period) as acquisition expenses; and
 - (d) the amount treated as expenses of management shall not include any amount in respect of expenses referable to general annuity business or pension business; and
 - (e) the amount of profits from which expenses of management may be deducted for any accounting period shall not exceed the net income and gains of that accounting period referable to basic life assurance business;

and for this purpose “net income and gains” means income and gains after deducting any reliefs or exemptions which fall to be applied before taking account of this section.”

^{F123}(3)

- (4) In consequence of the amendment made by subsection (2) above, section 436(3)(b) of the Taxes Act 1988 (no deduction of expenses of management in certain cases) shall cease to have effect.
- (5) This section has effect with respect to accounting periods beginning on or after 1st January 1990; and, in relation to a straddling period, sections 75, 76 and 436 of the Taxes Act 1988—
- (a) shall have effect in relation to the 1989 component period without regard to the amendments made by subsections (2) to (4) above; and
 - (b) shall have effect in relation to the 1990 component period as amended by those subsections.
- (6) If, for the 1989 component period, there is an amount of expenses of management available to be carried forward to the 1990 component period under section 75(3)(a) of the Taxes Act 1988 (as applied by section 76 thereof),—
- (a) that amount shall form a pool to which the following provisions of this section shall apply and to which section 75(3)(b) of that Act (in this subsection referred to as “the carry-forward provision”) shall apply only to the extent specified in paragraph (c) below;

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (b) if, for the 1990 component period or any subsequent accounting period, the amount which (disregarding the pool) may be deducted in respect of expenses of management is less than the amount of the profits from which, disregarding section 76(1)(e) of that Act (as set out in subsection (2) above), the expenses of management are deductible, paragraph (c) below shall apply for that period; and in that paragraph the difference between the amount which maybe so deducted and that amount of profits is referred to as “the potential deficiency” for the period;
 - (c) where this paragraph applies for an accounting period (including the 1990 component period) the carry-forward provision shall be taken to have had effect to carry forward to the accounting period (as if disbursed as expenses for that period) so much of the pool as does not exceed the potential deficiency for the period and is permitted under section 76(2) of the Taxes Act 1988; and the amount of the pool shall be reduced accordingly.
- (7) In the case of a company which has an accounting period beginning on 1st January 1990, subsection (6) above shall apply as if—
- (a) any reference therein to the 1989 component period were a reference to the accounting period ending on 31st December 1989; and
 - (b) any reference therein to the 1990 component period were a reference to the accounting period beginning on 1st January 1990.

Textual Amendments

F123 S. 87(3) repealed by Finance Act 1991 (c. 31, SIF 63:1), s. 123, Sch. 19 Pt.V.

88 Corporation tax: policy holders’ fraction of profits. **U.K.**

- (1) Subject to subsection (2) [^{F124}and section 88A] below, in the case of a company carrying on life assurance business, the rate of corporation tax chargeable for any financial year on
- [^{F125}(a) the policy holders’ share of the relevant profits for any accounting period, or
 - (b) where the business is mutual business, the whole of those profits,
- shall] be deemed to be the rate at which income tax at the basic rate is charged for the year of assessment which begins on 6th April in the financial year concerned.
- (2) Subsection (1) above does not apply in relation to profits charged under Case I of Schedule D.
- [^{F126}(3) For the purposes of subsection (1) above, the relevant profits of a company for an accounting period are the income and gains of the company’s life assurance business reduced by the aggregate amount of—
- [amounts falling in respect of any non-trading deficits on the company’s loan
 - ^{F127}(aa) relationships to be brought into account in that period in accordance with paragraph 4 of Schedule 11 to the Finance Act 1996,]
 - (a) expenses of management falling to be deducted under section 76 of the Taxes Act 1988, and
 - (b) charges on income,
- so far as referable to the company’s life assurance business.]

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (4) In determining for the purposes of section 13 of the Taxes Act 1988 (small companies' relief) the profits and basic profits (within the meaning of that section) of an accounting period of a company carrying on life assurance business, the policy holders' [^{F128}share] of the company's relevant profits for that period [^{F129}, or where the business is mutual business the whole of those profits,] shall be left out of account.
- (5) This section has effect with respect to the profits of a company for accounting periods beginning on or after 1st January 1990 (including the 1990 component period); and, for this purpose, the profits of the 1990 component period shall be taken to be that portion of the profits of the straddling period which the length of the 1990 component period bears to the length of the straddling period.

Textual Amendments

- F124** Words in s. 88(1) inserted (29.4.1996 with effect for the financial year 1996 and subsequent financial years) by 1996 c. 8, s. 73(4), **Sch. 6 para. 26(1)(4)**
- F125** Words in s. 88(1) substituted (and deemed always to have had effect) by Finance Act 1990 (c. 29), s. **45(1)(10)**
- F126** S. 88(3) substituted (1.5.1995) by 1995 c. 4, s. 51, **Sch. 8 Pt. I para. 21(2)** (with Sch. 8 paras. 55(2), 57(1))
- F127** S. 88(3)(aa) inserted (29.4.1996) by 1996 c. 8, s. 104, **Sch. 14 para. 56** (with savings in Ch. II, ss. 80-105 of Pt. IV)
- F128** Word in s. 88(4) substituted (and deemed always to have had effect) by Finance Act 1990 (c. 29), s. **45(2)(10)**
- F129** Words in s. 88(4) inserted (and deemed always to have had effect) by Finance Act 1990 (c. 29), s. **45(2)(10)**

[^{F130}88A Lower corporation tax rate on certain insurance company profits. U.K.]

- (1) Subject to subsection (2) below, in the case of a company carrying on basic life assurance and general annuity business, the rate of corporation tax chargeable for any financial year on so much of the company's BLAGAB profits for any accounting period as represents the company's lower rate income for the period shall be deemed to be the rate at which income tax at the lower rate is charged for the year of assessment which begins on 6th April in the financial year concerned.
- (2) Subsection (1) above does not apply in relation to profits charged under Case I of Schedule D.
- (3) In this section, references to a company's lower rate income for any accounting period are references to so much of the income and gains of its basic life assurance and general annuity business for the period as consists in income of any of the following descriptions—
 - (a) income falling within paragraph (a) of Case III of Schedule D, as that Case applies for the purposes of corporation tax;
 - (b) purchased life annuities to which section 656 of the Taxes Act 1988 applies or to which that section would apply but for section 657(2)(a) of that Act;
 - (c) any such dividends or other distributions of a company not resident in the United Kingdom as would be chargeable under Schedule F if the company were resident in the United Kingdom;
 - (d) so much of—

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (i) any dividend distribution (within the meaning of section 468J of the Taxes Act 1988), [^{F131}or
 [any foreign income distribution (within the meaning of section 468K ^{F132}(ii) of that Act),]
 as is deemed by subsection (2) of section 468Q of that Act [^{F133}(or by that subsection as applied by section 468R(2) of that Act)] to be an annual payment.
- (4) Where for any period—
- (a) an insurance company's basic life assurance and general annuity business is mutual business,
 - (b) the policy holders' share of the company's relevant profits is equal to all those profits, or
 - (c) the policy holders' share of the company's relevant profits is more than the company's BLAGAB profits,
- the amount to be taken for the purposes of this section as the amount of the company's BLAGAB profits for that period representing its lower rate income for that period shall be the amount equal to the applicable proportion of its BLAGAB profits.
- (5) Where subsection (4) above does not apply in the case of an insurance company for any period, the amount to be taken for the purposes of this section as the amount of the company's BLAGAB profits for the period representing its lower rate income for that period shall be the amount produced by multiplying the following, that is to say—
- (a) the applicable proportion of those profits; and
 - (b) the fraction given by dividing the policy holders' share of the relevant profits of the company for the period by its BLAGAB profits for that period.
- (6) For the purposes of this section the applicable proportion of a company's BLAGAB profits for any period is the amount which bears the same proportion to those profits as the aggregate amount of the company's lower rate income for that period bears to the total income and gains for that period of the company's basic life assurance and general annuity business.
- (7) For the purposes of this section, the BLAGAB profits of a company for an accounting period are the income and gains of the company's basic life assurance and general annuity business reduced by the aggregate amount of—
- (a) any non-trading deficit on the company's loan relationships,
 - (b) expenses of management falling to be deducted under section 76 of the Taxes Act 1988, and
 - (c) charges on income,
- so far as referable to the company's basic life assurance and general annuity business.
- (8) Section 88(3) above applies for the purposes of this section as it applies for the purposes of section 88(1) above.]

Textual Amendments

F130 S. 88A inserted (29.4.1996 with effect for the financial year 1996 and subsequent financial years) by 1996 c. 8, s. 73, **Sch. 6 paras. 26(2)(4)**

F131 Word in s. 88A(3)(d)(i) repealed (31.7.1997 with effect in relation to distributions made on or after 6.4.1999) by 1997 c. 58, ss. 36(4), 52, **Sch. 8 Pt. II(11)**, note

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

F132 S. 88A(3)(d)(ii) repealed (31.7.1997 with effect in relation to distributions made on or after 6.4.1999) by 1997 c. 58, ss. 36(4), 52, Sch. 6 para. 18(1)(a)(2), **Sch. 8 Pt. II(11)**, note

F133 Words in s. 88A(3) repealed (31.7.1997 with effect in relation to distributions made on or after 6.4.1999) by 1997 c. 58, ss. 36(4), 52, Sch. 6 para. 18(1)(b)(2), **Sch. 8 Pt. II(11)**, note

Modifications etc. (not altering text)

C37 S. 88A modified (*retrospective* to 1.1.1996) by **S.I. 1997/473, regs. 1(2), 40**

[^{F134}89 Policy holders' share of profits. U.K.]

(1) The references in [^{F135}sections 88 and 88A] above to the policy holders' share of the relevant profits for an accounting period of a company carrying on life assurance business [^{F136}or, as the case may be, basic life assurance and general annuity business] are references to the amount arrived at by deducting from those profits the Case I profits of the company for the period in respect of [^{F137}its life assurance business], reduced in accordance with subsection (2) below.

(2) For the purposes of subsection (1) above, the Case I profits for a period shall be reduced by—

- ^{F138}(a)
- (b) the shareholders' share of any ^{F139} . . . franked investment income arising in the period [^{F140}which is referable to the company's basic life assurance and general annuity business][^{F141}, and
- (c) the shareholders' share of any foreign income dividends arising to the company in the period [^{F142}which are referable to the company's basic life assurance and general annuity business].]

[For the purposes of subsection (2) above—

- ^{F143}(2A) (a) "foreign income dividends" shall be construed in accordance with Chapter VA of Part VI;
- (b) the shareholders' share of any foreign income dividends is so much of the income they represent as is the shareholders' share.]

(3) For the purposes of those section "the shareholders' share" in relation to any income is so much of the income as is represented by the fraction

$$\frac{A}{B}$$

where—

A is an amount equal to the Case I profits of the company for the period in question in respect of its life assurance business, and

B is an amount equal to the excess of the company's relevant non-premium income and relevant gains over its relevant expenses and relevant interest for the period.

(4) Where there is no such excess as is mentioned in subsection (3) above, or where the Case I profits are greater than any excess, the whole of the income shall be the shareholders' share; and (subject to that) where there are no Case I profits, none of the income shall be the shareholders' share.

(5) In subsection (3) above the references to the relevant non-premium income, relevant gains, relevant expenses and relevant interest of a company for an accounting period

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

are references respectively to the following items as brought into account for the period, so far as referable to the company's life assurance business,—

- (a) the company's investment income from the assets of its long-term [F144insurance]fund together with its other income, apart from premiums;
- (b) any increase in the value (whether realised or not) of those assets;
- (c) expenses payable by the company;
- (d) interest payable by the company;

and if for any period there is a reduction in the value referred to in paragraph (b) above (as brought into account for the period), that reduction shall be taken into account as an expense of the period.

- (6) Except in so far as regulations made by the Treasury otherwise provide, in this section “brought into account” means brought into account in the revenue account prepared for the purposes of [F145Chapter 9 of the Prudential Sourcebook (Insurers)]; and where the company's period of account does not coincide with the accounting period, any reference to an amount brought into account for the accounting period is a reference to the corresponding amount brought into account for the period of account in which the accounting period is comprised, proportionately reduced to reflect the length of the accounting period as compared with the length of the period of account.

[In this section—
F146(7)

“Case I profits” means profits computed in accordance with the provisions of the Taxes Act 1988 applicable to Case I of Schedule D;

“the Prudential Sourcebook (Insurers)” means the Interim Prudential Sourcebook for Insurers made by the Financial Services Authority under the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000.]

F147(8)]

Textual Amendments

F134 S. 89 substituted retrospectively by [Finance Act 1990 \(c. 29\)](#) {s. 45(3)}

F135 Words in s. 89(1) substituted (29.4.1996 with effect for the financial year 1996 and subsequent financial years) by [1996 c. 8, s. 73\(4\)](#), [Sch. 6 para. 26\(3\)\(a\)\(4\)](#)

F136 Words in s. 89(1) inserted (29.4.1996 with effect for the financial year 1996 and subsequent financial years) by [1996 c. 8, s. 73\(4\)](#), [Sch. 6 para. 26\(3\)\(b\)\(4\)](#)

F137 Words in s. 89(1) substituted (29.4.1996 with effect for the financial year 1996 and subsequent financial years) by [1996 c. 8, s. 73\(4\)](#), [Sch. 6 para. 26\(3\)\(c\)\(4\)](#)

F138 S. 89(2)(a) repealed (31.7.1997 with effect in relation to distributions made on or after 2.7.1997) by [1997 c. 58, ss. 23, 52](#), [Sch. 3 para. 14\(2\)\(a\)\(4\)](#), [Sch. 8 Pt. II\(6\)](#), note

F139 Words in s. 89(2)(b) repealed (31.7.1997 with effect in relation to distributions made on or after 2.7.1997) by [1997 c. 58, ss. 23, 52](#), [Sch. 3 para. 14\(2\)\(b\)\(i\)\(4\)](#), [Sch. 8 Pt. II\(6\)](#), note

F140 Words in s. 89(2)(b) substituted (31.7.1997 with effect in relation to distributions made on or after 2.7.1997) by [1997 c. 58, s. 23](#), [Sch. 3 para. 14\(2\)\(b\)\(ii\)\(4\)](#)

F141 S. 89(2)(c) and word immediately preceding it repealed (31.7.1997 with effect in relation to distributions made on or after 6.4.1999) by [1997 c. 58, ss. 36, 52](#), [Sch. 6 para. 19\(2\)\(4\)](#), [Sch. 8 Pt. II\(11\)](#), note

F142 Words in s. 89(2)(c) substituted (31.7.1997 with effect in relation to distributions made on or after 2.7.1997) by [1997 c. 58, s. 23](#), [Sch. 3 para. 14\(2\)\(c\)\(4\)](#)

F143 S. 89(2A) repealed (31.7.1997 with effect in relation to distributions made on or after 2.7.1997) by [1997 c. 58, ss. 36, 52](#), [Sch. 6 para. 19\(3\)\(4\)](#), [Sch. 8 Pt. II\(11\)](#), note

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- F144** Word in s. 89(5)(a) substituted (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/3629, **art. 60(3)**
- F145** Words in s. 89(6) substituted (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/3629, **art. 58(2)**
- F146** S. 89(7) substituted (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/3629, **art. 58(3)**
- F147** S. 89(8) repealed (31.7.1997 with effect in relation to distributions made on or after 2.7.1997) by 1997 c. 58, ss. 23, 52, Sch. 3 para. 14(3)(4), **Sch. 8 Pt. 2(6)** Note

Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C38** S. 89 amended (27.7.1993 with application as mentioned in s. 78(11) of the amending Act) by 1993 c. 34, s. 78(6)(11)

[^{F148}**89A Modification of sections 83 and 89 in relation to overseas life insurance companies. U.K.**

Schedule 8A to this Act (which makes modifications of sections 83 and 89 in relation to overseas life insurance companies) shall have effect.]

Textual Amendments

- F148** S. 89A inserted (27.7.1993) by 1993 c. 34, s. 101(1)

90 Life policies etc. held by companies. U.K.

Schedule 9 to this Act (which imposes tax on certain benefits relating to life policies, life annuities and capital redemption policies held by companies, and makes related provision) shall have effect.

Underwriters

91 Premiums trust funds: stock lending. U.K.

- (1) In section 725 of the Taxes Act 1988 (Lloyd’s underwriters) the following subsections shall be inserted after subsection (9)—

“(10) Subsection (11) below applies where the following state of affairs exists at the beginning of 1st January of any year or the end of 31st December of any year—

- (a) securities have been transferred by the trustees of a premiums trust fund in pursuance of an arrangement mentioned in section 129(1) or (2),
- (b) the transfer was made to enable another person to fulfil a contract or to make a transfer,
- (c) securities have not been transferred in return, and
- (d) section 129(3) applies to the transfer made by the trustees.

(11) The securities transferred by the trustees shall be treated for the purposes of subsections (1) to (6) above as if they formed part of the premiums trust fund at the beginning of 1st January concerned or the end of 31st December concerned (as the case may be).”

^{F149}(2)

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (3) This section applies where the transfer by the trustees of a premiums trust fund is made after the date specified as mentioned in section 129(6) of the Taxes Act 1988.

Textual Amendments

F149 s. 91(2) repealed (6.3.1992 with effect as mentioned in s. 289(1)(2) of the repealing Act) by [Taxation of Chargeable Gains Act 1992 \(c. 12\)](#), ss. 289, 290, **Sch.12** (with ss. 201(3), [Sch. 11 paras. 22, 26\(2\), 27](#))

92 Regulations about underwriters etc. U.K.

- (1) In section 451(1A) of the Taxes Act 1988 (regulations about underwriters)for the words from “with respect to” to the end there shall be substituted the words “with respect to any year or years of assessment; and the year (or any of the years) may be the one in which the regulations are made or any year falling before or after that year.”
- (2) The following subsection shall be inserted after section 451(1A) of that Act—

“(1B) But the regulations may not make provision with respect to any year of assessment which precedes the next but one preceding the year of assessment in which the regulations are made.”

- F150(3)
- F151(4)
- F151(5)
- F151(6)
- F151(7)

Textual Amendments

F150 S. 92(3) repealed (6.3.1992 with effect as mentioned in s. 289(1)(2) of the repealing Act) by [Taxation of Chargeable Gains Act 1992 \(c. 12\)](#), ss. 289, 290, **Sch. 12** (with ss. 201(3), [Sch. 11 paras. 22, 26\(2\), 27](#))

F151 S. 92(4)-(7) repealed (27.7.1993 with effect for the year 1992-93 and subsequent years of assessment) by 1993 c. 34, s. 213, **Sch. 23 Pt. III(12)** Note 5

Securities

F152⁹³ U.K.

Textual Amendments

F152 S. 93 repealed (29.4.1996 with effect as mentioned in s. 105(1) of the amending Act) by 1996 c. 8, s. 205, **Sch. 41 Pt. V(3)**, note

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

F153 94 **U.K.**

Textual Amendments

F153 S. 94 repealed (29.4.1996 with effect as mentioned in s. 105(1) of the amending Act) by 1996 c. 8, s. 205, Sch. 41 Pt. V(3), note

F154 95 **U.K.**

Textual Amendments

F154 S. 95 repealed (29.4.1996 with effect as mentioned in s. 105(1) of the amending Act) by 1996 c. 8, s. 205, Sch. 41 Pt. V(3), note

96 **Securities: miscellaneous.** **U.K.**

(1) In section 452(8) of the Taxes Act 1988 (special reserve funds) for the words from “In paragraph (a) above” to the end there shall be substituted—

“In paragraph (a) above “income” includes—

- (a) annual profits or gains chargeable to tax by virtue of section 714(2) or 716(3),
- (b) amounts treated as income chargeable to tax by virtue of paragraph 4 of Schedule 4, and
- (c) amounts treated as income chargeable to tax by virtue of paragraph 5 of Schedule 11 to the Finance Act 1989.”

(2) In section 687 of the Taxes Act 1988 (payments under discretionary trusts) the following shall be inserted after subsection (3)(g)—

- “(h) the amount of any tax on an amount which is treated as income of the trustees by virtue of paragraph 4 of Schedule 4 and is charged to tax at a rate equal to the sum of the basic rate and the additional rate by virtue of paragraph 17 of that Schedule;
- (i) the amount of any tax on an amount which is treated as income of the trustees by virtue of paragraph 5 of Schedule 11 to the Finance Act 1989 and is charged to tax at a rate equal to the sum of the basic rate and the additional rate by virtue of paragraph 11 of that Schedule;”.

F155 (3)

(4) The new paragraphs (b) and (c) inserted by subsection (1) above, and subsection (2) above, shall apply—

- (a) in the case of a deep discount security, where there is a disposal (within the meaning of Schedule 4 to the Taxes Act 1988) on or after 14th March 1989;
- (b) in the case of a deep gain security, where there is a transfer within the meaning of Schedule 11 to this Act, or a redemption, on or after 14th March 1989.

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

Textual Amendments

F155 S. 96(3) repealed (6.3.1992 with effect as mentioned in s. 289(1)(2) of the repealing Act) by [Taxation of Chargeable Gains Act 1992 \(c. 12\)](#), ss. 289, 290, [Sch. 12](#) (with ss. 201(3), [Sch. 11 paras. 22, 26\(2\), 27](#))

Groups of companies

[^{F156}97] **Set-off of ACT where companies remain in the same group.** **U.K.**

- (1) In section 240 of the Taxes Act 1988 (set-off of company's ACT against subsidiary's liability to corporation tax) at the end of subsection (5)(set-off not to be made against subsidiary's liability to corporation tax for any accounting period in which, or in any part of which, it was not a subsidiary of the surrendering company) there shall be added the words "unless throughout that period or part both companies were subsidiaries of a third company".
- (2) This section shall have effect in relation to accounting periods ending on or after 14th March 1989.]

Textual Amendments

F156 S. 97 repealed (31.7.1998 with effect in accordance with [Sch. 3](#) of the amending Act) by [1998 c. 36, s. 165, Sch. 27 Pt. III\(2\)](#), note

[^{F157}98] **Restriction on set-off of ACT.** **U.K.**

- (1) After section 245 of the Taxes Act 1988 there shall be inserted—

“ Restriction on application of section 240 in certain circumstances.

- (1) This section applies if—
 - (a) there is a change in the ownership of a company (“the relevant company”);
 - (b) by virtue of section 240 the relevant company is treated as having paid an amount of advance corporation tax in respect of a distribution made by it at any time before the change; and
 - (c) within the period of six years beginning three years before the change, there is a major change in the nature or conduct of a trade or business of the company which is for the purposes of section 240 the surrendering company in relation to that amount.
- (2) No advance corporation tax which the relevant company is treated by virtue of section 240 as having paid in respect of a distribution made by it in an accounting period beginning before the change of ownership shall be treated under section 239(4) as paid by it in respect of distributions made in an accounting period ending after the change of ownership; and this subsection shall apply to an accounting period in which the change of ownership occurs as if the part ending with the change of ownership, and the part after, were two separate accounting periods.

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (3) Subsections (4) and (5) of section 245 shall apply also for the purposes of this section and as if the reference in subsection (4) of section 245 to the period of three years mentioned in subsection (1)(a) of that section were a reference to the period mentioned in subsection (1)(c) above.
- (4) Sections 768(8) and (9) and 769 shall apply also for the purposes of this section and as if in subsection (3) of section 769 the reference to the benefit of losses were a reference to the benefit of advance corporation tax.

Restriction on set-off where asset transferred after change in ownership of company.

- (1) Subsection (4) below applies if—
 - (a) there is a change in the ownership of a company (“the relevant company”);
 - (b) any advance corporation tax paid by the relevant company in respect of distributions made by it in an accounting period beginning before the change is treated under section 239(4) as paid by it in respect of distributions made by it in an accounting period ending after the change;
 - (c) after the change the relevant company acquires an asset from another company in such circumstances that section 273(1) of the Taxes Act 1970 applies to the acquisition; and
 - (d) a chargeable gain accrues to the relevant company on the disposal of the asset within the period of three years beginning with the change of ownership.
- (2) Subsection (1)(b) above shall apply to an accounting period in which the change of ownership occurs as if the part ending with the change of ownership, and the part after, were two separate accounting periods.
- (3) For the purposes of subsection (1)(d) above an asset acquired by the relevant company as mentioned in subsection (1)(c) above shall be treated as the same as an asset owned at a later time by that company if the value of the second asset is derived in whole or in part from the first asset, and in particular where the second asset is a freehold, and the first asset was a leasehold and the lessee has acquired the reversion.
- (4) In relation to the accounting period in which the chargeable gain accrues to the relevant company (“the relevant period”), section 239 shall have effect as if the limit imposed by subsection (2) of that section on the amount of advance corporation tax to be set against the relevant company’s liability to corporation tax were reduced by whichever is the lesser of—
 - (a) the amount of advance corporation tax that would have been payable (apart from section 241) in respect of a distribution made at the end of the relevant period of an amount which, together with the advance corporation tax so payable in respect of it, is equal to the chargeable gain, and
 - (b) the amount of surplus advance corporation tax in relation to the accounting period which by virtue of subsection (2) above is treated for the purposes of subsection (1)(b) above as ending with the change of ownership.

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (5) Sections 768(8) and (9) and 769 shall apply also for the purposes of this section and as if in subsection (3) of section 769 the reference to the benefit of losses were a reference to the benefit of advance corporation tax.”
- (2) This section shall have effect where the change in the ownership of the relevant company occurs on or after 14th March 1989.]

Textual Amendments

F157 S. 98 repealed (31.7.1998 with effect in accordance with Sch. 3 of the amending Act) by 1998 c. 36, s. 165, Sch. 27 Pt. III(2), note

F15899 **U.K.**

Textual Amendments

F158 S. 99 repealed (11.5.2001 with application as mentioned in Sch. 33 Pt. 2(10) of the amending Act) by 2001 c. 9, s. 110, Sch. 33 Pt. 2(10), note

100 **Change in ownership of company.** **U.K.**

(1) Section 769 of the Taxes Act 1988 (which contains rules for determining whether for the purposes of sections 245 and 768 of that Act there is a change in the ownership of a company) shall be amended in accordance with this section.

(2) For subsection (6) there shall be substituted—

“(6) If there is a change in the ownership of a company, including a change occurring by virtue of the application of this subsection but not a change which is to be disregarded under subsection (5) above, then—

- (a) in a case falling within subsection (1)(a) above, the person mentioned in subsection (1)(a) shall be taken for the purposes of this section to acquire at the time of the change any relevant assets owned by the company;
- (b) in a case falling within subsection (1)(b) above but not within subsection(1)(a) above, each of the persons mentioned in subsection (1)(b) shall be taken for the purposes of this section to acquire at the time of the change the appropriate proportion of any relevant assets owned by the company; and
- (c) in any other case, each of the persons mentioned in paragraph (c) of subsection (1) above (other than any whose holding is disregarded under that paragraph) shall be taken for the purposes of this section to acquire at the time of the change the appropriate proportion of any relevant assets owned by the company.

(6A) In subsection (6) above—

“the appropriate proportion”, in relation to one of two or more persons mentioned in subsection (1)(b) or (c) above, means a proportion corresponding to the proportion which the percentage of

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

the ordinary share capital acquired by him bears to the percentage of that capital acquired by all those persons taken together; and

“relevant assets”, in relation to a company, means—

- (a) any ordinary share capital of another company, and
- (b) any property or rights which under subsection (3) above may be taken into account instead of ordinary share capital of another company.

(6B) Notwithstanding that at any time a company (“the subsidiary company”) is a 75 per cent. subsidiary of another company (“the parent company”) it shall not be treated at that time as such a subsidiary for the purposes of this section unless, additionally, at that time—

- (a) the parent company would be beneficially entitled to not less than 75 per cent. of any profits available for distribution to equity holders of the subsidiary company; and
- (b) the parent company would be beneficially entitled to not less than 75 per cent. of any assets of the subsidiary company available for distribution to its equity holders on a winding-up.

(6C) Schedule 18 shall apply for the purposes of subsection (6B) above as it applies for the purposes of section 413(7).”

- (3) Subsection (7)(b) and (c) shall cease to have effect.
- (4) This section shall have effect where the change of ownership of a company would be treated as occurring on or after 14th March 1989.

101 Treatment of convertible shares or securities for purposes relating to group relief etc. U.K.

(1) Paragraph 1 of Schedule 18 to the Taxes Act 1988 (which contains definitions relating to group relief) shall be amended in accordance with this section.

(2) For sub-paragraph (3)(b) there shall be substituted—

“(b) do not carry any right either to conversion into shares or securities of any other description except—

- (i) shares to which sub-paragraph (5A) below applies,
- (ii) securities to which sub-paragraph (5B) below applies, or
- (iii) shares or securities in the company’s quoted parent company, or to the acquisition of any additional shares or securities;”.

(3) For sub-paragraph (5)(a) there shall be substituted—

“(a) which does not carry any right either to conversion into shares or securities of any other description except—

- (i) shares to which sub-paragraph (5A) below applies,
- (ii) securities to which sub-paragraph (5B) below applies, or
- (iii) shares or securities in the company’s quoted parent company, or to the acquisition of any additional shares or securities;”.

(4) After sub-paragraph (5) there shall be inserted—

“(5A) This sub-paragraph applies to any shares which—

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) satisfy the requirements of sub-paragraph (3)(a), (c) and (d) above, and
 - (b) do not carry any rights either to conversion into shares or securities of any other description, except shares or securities in the company's quoted parent company, or to the acquisition of any additional shares or securities.
- (5B) This sub-paragraph applies to any securities representing a loan of or including new consideration and—
- (a) which satisfies the requirements of sub-paragraph (5)(b) and (c) above, and
 - (b) which does not carry any such rights as are mentioned in sub-paragraph (5A)(b) above.
- (5C) For the purposes of sub-paragraphs (3) and (5) to (5B) above a company (“the parent company”) is another company’s “quoted parent company” if and only if—
- (a) the other company is a 75 per cent. subsidiary of the parent company,
 - (b) the parent company is not a 75 per cent. subsidiary of any company, and
 - (c) the parent company’s ordinary shares (or, if its ordinary share capital is divided into two or more classes, its ordinary shares of each class) are quoted on a recognised stock exchange or dealt in on the Unlisted Securities Market;
- and in this sub-paragraph “ordinary shares” means shares forming part of ordinary share capital.
- (5D) In the application of sub-paragraphs (3) and (5) to (5B) above in determining for the purposes of sub-paragraph (5C)(a) above who are the equity holders of the other company (and, accordingly, whether section 413(7) prevents the other company from being treated as a 75 per cent. subsidiary of the parent company for the purposes of sub-paragraph (5C)(a)), it shall be assumed that the parent company is for the purposes of sub-paragraphs (3) and (5) to (5B) above the other company’s quoted parent company.”
- (5) In sub-paragraph (6) for the words “to (5)” there shall be substituted the words “to (5D)”.
- (6) This section, so far as relating to Schedule 18 of the Taxes Act 1988 in its application (by virtue of section 138 below) for the purposes of subsections (1D) and (1E) of section 272 of the Taxes Act 1970, shall be deemed to have come into force on 14th March 1989.

102 Surrender of company tax refund etc. within group. U.K.

- (1) Subsection (2) below applies where—
- (a) there falls to be made to a company (“the surrendering company”) which is a member of a group throughout the appropriate period a tax refund relating to an accounting period of the company (“the relevant accounting period”), and
 - (b) another company (“the recipient company”) which is a member of the same group throughout the appropriate period also has the relevant accounting period as an accounting period.

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

(2) Where this subsection applies the two companies may, at any time before the refund is made to the surrendering company, jointly give notice to the inspector in such form as the Board may require that subsection (4) below is to have effect in relation to the refund or to any part of the refund specified in the notice.

(3) In subsection (1) above—

“appropriate period” means the period beginning with the relevant accounting period and ending on the day on which the notice under subsection (2) above is given, and

“tax refund relating to an accounting period” means, in relation to a company—

- (a) a repayment of corporation tax paid by the company for the period,
- (b) a repayment of income tax in respect of a payment received by the company in the period, or
- (c) a payment of the whole or part of the tax credit comprised in any franked investment income received by the company in the period.

(4) Subject to subsection (6) below, where this subsection has effect in relation to any refund or part of a refund—

- (a) the recipient company shall be treated for all purposes of the Tax Acts as having paid on the relevant date an amount of corporation tax for the relevant accounting period equal to the amount of the refund or part, and
- (b) there shall be treated for all those purposes as having been made to the surrendering company on the relevant date a repayment of corporation tax or income tax or a payment of tax credit (as the case may be) equal to the amount of the refund or part;

and where the refund is a repayment of corporation tax, any interest relating to it which has been paid by the surrendering company shall be treated as having been paid by the recipient company.

[^{F159}(4A) Where subsection (4) above has effect in relation to any amount and there is, by virtue of any of subsections (7) to [^{F160}(7CA)] of section 826 of the Taxes Act 1988, a period for which the whole or any part of that amount would not, had the refund been made to the surrendering company, have carried interest under that section, that period shall be treated as excluded—

- (a) from any period for which any refund made by virtue of subsection (4) above to the recipient company in respect of some or all of that amount or, as the case may be, that part of it is to carry interest under that section; and
- (b) from any period for which a sum representing some or all of that amount or part would (apart from this subsection) be treated by virtue of subsection (4) above as not carrying interest under section 87A of the ^{M15}Taxes Management Act 1970;

and in determining for the purposes of this subsection which part of any amount is applied in discharging a liability of the recipient company to pay any corporation tax and which part is represented by a refund to the recipient company, it shall be assumed that the part in relation to which there is a period which would not have carried interest under section 826 of the Taxes Act 1988 is applied in preference to any other part of that amount in or towards discharging the liability.]

(5) In subsection (4) above “relevant date”, in relation to a refund, means—

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) in so far as it consists of a repayment of corporation tax paid by the surrendering company after the date on which it became due and payable under ^{F161}section 59D or 59E of the Taxes Management Act 1970], the day on which it was paid by that company, and
 - (b) otherwise, the date on which corporation tax for the relevant accounting period became due and payable.
- (6) For the purpose of ascertaining the amount of any penalty to which the recipient company is liable under ^{F162}paragraph 18 of the Taxes Management Act 1970], the corporation tax which the company is treated as having paid by subsection (4)(a) above shall be treated as paid on the day on which the notice under subsection (2) above is given (and not on the relevant date).
- (7) A payment for a transferred tax refund—
- (a) shall not be taken into account in computing profits or losses of either company for corporation tax purposes, and
 - (b) shall not for any of the purposes of the Corporation Tax Acts be regarded as a distribution or a charge on income;
- and in this subsection “a payment for a transferred tax refund” means a payment made by the receiving company to the surrendering company in pursuance of an agreement between them as respects the giving of a notice under this section, being a payment not exceeding the amount of the refund in question.
- (8) For the purposes of this section two companies are members of the same group if and only if they would be for the purposes of Chapter IV of Part X of the Taxes Act 1988.
- (9) This section shall not apply unless the relevant accounting period ends after such day, not being earlier than 31st March 1992, as the Treasury may by order made by statutory instrument appoint.

Textual Amendments

- F159** S. 102(4A) inserted (27.7.1993) by 1993 c. 34, s. 120, **Sch. 14 para. 11**
- F160** Words in s. 102(4A) substituted (1.5.1995) by 1995 c. 4, s. 130, **Sch. 24 Pt. II para. 12(3)**
- F161** Words in s. 102(5)(a) substituted (27.7.1999) with effect in relation to accounting periods ending on or after 1.7.1999) by 1999 c. 16, s. 89(2)(3)
- F162** Words in s. 102(6) substituted (27.7.1999) with effect in relation to accounting periods ending on or after 1.7.1999) by 1999 c. 16, s. 93(1)(2), **Sch. 11 para. 3**

Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C39** S. 102 applied (with modifications) (7.1.1999) by S.I. 1998/3175, **reg. 9(1)**

Marginal Citations

- M15** 1970 c. 9.

Close companies

103 Repeal of apportionment provisions. **U.K.**

- (1) Except as provided by subsection (2) below, Chapter III of Part XI of the Taxes Act 1988 (apportionment of undistributed income etc. of close companies) shall not have effect in relation to accounting periods beginning after 31st March 1989.

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (2) Section 427(4) of the Taxes Act 1988 (which gives relief to an individual where income apportioned to him in an earlier accounting period of a close company is included in a distribution received by him in a later accounting period), and section 427(5) of, and Part I of Schedule 19 to, that Act so far as they relate to section 427(4), shall continue to have effect in any case where the subsequent distribution referred to in section 427(4) is made before 1st April 1992.

104 Meaning of “close company”. **U.K.**

- (1) In section 414 of the Taxes Act 1988 for subsection (2) (further case in which a company is a close company for the purposes of the Tax Acts) there shall be substituted—

“(2) Subject to section 415 and subsection (5) below, a company resident in the United Kingdom (but not falling within subsection (1)(b) above) is also a close company if five or fewer participators, or participators who are directors, together possess or are entitled to acquire—

- (a) such rights as would, in the event of the winding-up of the company (“the relevant company”) on the basis set out in subsection (2A) below, entitle them to receive the greater part of the assets of the relevant company which would then be available for distribution among the participators, or
- (b) such rights as would in that event so entitle them if any rights which any of them or any other person has as a loan creditor (in relation to the relevant company or any other company) were disregarded.

(2A) In the notional winding-up of the relevant company, the part of the assets available for distribution among the participators which any person is entitled to receive is the aggregate of—

- (a) any part of those assets which he would be entitled to receive in the event of the winding-up of the company, and
- (b) any part of those assets which he would be entitled to receive if—
 - (i) any other company which is a participator in the relevant company and is entitled to receive any assets in the notional winding-up were also wound upon the basis set out in this subsection, and
 - (ii) the part of the assets of the relevant company to which the other company is entitled were distributed among the participators in the other company in proportion to their respective entitlement to the assets of the other company available for distribution among the participators.

(2B) In the application of subsection (2A) above to the notional winding-up of the other company and to any further notional winding-up required by paragraph (b) of that subsection (or by any further application of that paragraph), references to “the relevant company” shall have effect as references to the company concerned.

(2C) In ascertaining under subsection (2) above whether five or fewer participators, or participators who are directors, together possess or are entitled to acquire rights such as are mentioned in paragraph (a) or (b) of that subsection—

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) a person shall be treated as a participator in or director of the relevant company if he is a participator in or director of any other company which would be entitled to receive assets in the notional winding-up of the relevant company on the basis set out in subsection (2A) above, and
 - (b) except in the application of subsection (2A) above, no account shall be taken of a participator which is a company unless the company possesses or is entitled to acquire the rights in a fiduciary or representative capacity.
- (2D) Subsections (4) to (6) of section 416 apply for the purposes of subsections (2) and (2A) above as they apply for the purposes of subsection (2) of that section.”
- (2) Subsection (3) of that section shall cease to have effect.
- (3) In subsection (5)(b) of that section for the words from “paragraph(c)” to “that paragraph” there shall be substituted the words “paragraph (a) of subsection (2) above or paragraph (c) of section 416(2) and it would not be a close company if the references in those paragraphs”.
- (4) This section shall be deemed to have come into force on 1st April 1989.

105 **Small companies’ rate not available to certain close companies.** U.K.

- (1) In section 13 of the Taxes Act 1988 (small companies’ relief) in subsection (1) for the words “a company resident in the United Kingdom” there shall be substituted the words “a company which—
- (a) is resident in the United Kingdom, and
 - (b) is not a close investment-holding company (as defined in section 13A) at the end of that period.”.
- (2) After that section there shall be inserted the following section—

“13A Close investment-holding companies.

- (1) A close company is for the purposes of section 13(1) a “close investment-holding company” unless it complies with subsection (2) below.
- (2) A company (“the relevant company”) complies with this subsection in any accounting period if throughout that period it exists wholly or mainly for any one or more of the following purposes—
- (a) the purpose of carrying on a trade or trades on a commercial basis,
 - (b) the purpose of making investments in land or estates or interests in land in cases where the land is, or is intended to be, let to persons other than—
 - (i) any person connected with the relevant company, or
 - (ii) any person who is the wife or husband of an individual connected with the relevant company, or is a relative, or the wife or husband of a relative, of such an individual or of the husband or wife of such an individual,

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (c) the purpose of holding shares in and securities of, or making loans to, one or more companies each of which is a qualifying company or a company which—
 - (i) is under the control of the relevant company or of a company which has control of the relevant company, and
 - (ii) itself exists wholly or mainly for the purpose of holding shares in or securities of, or making loans to, one or more qualifying companies,
 - (d) the purpose of co-ordinating the administration of two or more qualifying companies,
 - (e) the purpose of a trade or trades carried on on a commercial basis by one or more qualifying companies or by a company which has control of the relevant company, and
 - (f) the purpose of the making, by one or more qualifying companies or by a company which has control of the relevant company, of investments as mentioned in paragraph (b) above.
- (3) For the purposes of subsection (2) above, a company is a “qualifying company”, in relation to the relevant company, if it—
- (a) is under the control of the relevant company or of a company which has control of the relevant company, and
 - (b) exists wholly or mainly for either or both of the purposes mentioned in subsection (2)(a) or (b) above.
- (4) Where a company is wound up, it shall not be treated as failing to comply with subsection (2) above in the accounting period that (by virtue of subsection (7) of section 12) begins with the time which is for the purposes of that subsection the commencement of the winding up, if it complied with subsection (2) above in the accounting period that ends with that time.
- (5) In this section—
- “control” shall be construed in accordance with section 416, and
 - “relative” has the meaning given by section 839(8).
- (6) Section 839 shall apply for the purposes of this section.”
- (3) This section shall have effect in relation to accounting periods beginning after 31st March 1989.

[^{F163}106 **Restriction on payment of tax credits.** U.K.]

- (1) In section 231 of the Taxes Act 1988 (tax credits for certain recipients of qualifying distributions) in subsection (3) after the words “made and” there shall be inserted the words “subject to subsections (3A) to (3D) below” and after that subsection there shall be inserted—
- “(3A) Subject to subsection (3B) below, where it appears to the inspector that, in any accounting period of a company at the end of which it is a close investment-holding company—
- (a) arrangements relating to the distribution of the profits of the company exist or have existed the main purpose of which or one of the main purposes of which is to enable payments, or payments of a greater amount, to be made to any one or more individuals under

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

subsection (3) above in respect of such an excess as is mentioned in that subsection, and

- (b) by virtue of those arrangements, any eligible person—
- (i) receives a qualifying distribution consisting of a payment made by the company on the redemption, repayment or purchase of its own shares, or
 - (ii) receives any other qualifying distribution in respect of shares in or securities of the company, where the amount or value of the distribution is greater than might in all the circumstances have been expected but for the arrangements,

the entitlement of the eligible person to have paid to him under subsection (3) above all or part of a tax credit in respect of any distribution made by the company in the period shall be restricted to such extent as appears to the inspector to be just and reasonable.

(3B) Subsection (3A) above does not apply in relation to a tax credit in respect of a dividend paid by a company in any accounting period in respect of its ordinary share capital if—

- (a) throughout the period, the company's ordinary share capital consisted of only one class of shares, and
- (b) no person waived his entitlement to any dividend which would have become payable by the company in the period or failed to receive any dividend which had become due and payable to him by the company in the period.

(3C) In subsection (3A) above—

“arrangements” means arrangements of any kind whether in writing or not,

“close investment-holding company” has the meaning given by section 13A, and

“eligible person”, in relation to a qualifying distribution, means an individual resident in the United Kingdom who would (apart from subsection (3A) above) be entitled to have paid to him under subsection (3) above all or part of a tax credit in respect of the distribution.

(3D) In determining under subsection (3) above whether a person is entitled to have any excess of tax credit paid to him in a case where subsection (3A) above applies, tax credits shall be set against income tax in the order that results in the greatest payment in respect of the excess.”

(2) This section shall have effect in relation to distributions made by companies in accounting periods beginning after 31st March 1989.]

Textual Amendments

F163 S. 106 repealed (31.7.1997 with effect in relation to distributions made on or after 6.4.1999) by 1997 c. 58, s. 52, **Sch. 8 Pt. II(9)**, note 3

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

107 Close companies: consequential amendments. U.K.

Schedule 12 to this Act (in which Part I contains administrative provisions relating to close companies and Part II makes amendments connected with section 103 above) shall have effect.

Settlements etc.

F164 108 U.K.

Textual Amendments

F164 S. 108 repealed (1.5.1995 with effect for the year 1995-96 and subsequent years of assessment) by 1995 c. 4, s. 162, **Sch. 29 Pt. VIII(8)**, note

109 Settlements where settlor retains interest in settled property. U.K.

F165(1)

F165(2)

F165(3)

(4) In section 677(2)(c) of that Act, after “674” there shall be inserted “674A”.

Textual Amendments

F165 S. 109(1)-(3) repealed (1.5.1995 with effect for the year 1995-96 and subsequent years of assessment) by 1995 c. 4, s. 162, **Sch. 29 Pt. VIII(8)**, note

110 Residence of trustees. U.K.

(1) Where the trustees of a settlement include at least one who is not resident in the United Kingdom as well as at least one who is, then for all the purposes of the Income Tax Acts—

- (a) if the condition in subsection (2) below is satisfied, the trustee or trustees not resident in the United Kingdom shall be treated as resident there, and
- (b) otherwise, the trustee or trustees resident in the United Kingdom shall be treated as not resident there (but as resident outside the United Kingdom).

(2) The condition referred to in subsection (1) above is that the settlor or, where there is more than one, any of them is at any relevant time—

- (a) resident in the United Kingdom,
- (b) ordinarily resident there, or
- (c) domiciled there.

(3) For the purposes of subsection (2) above the following are relevant times in relation to a settlor—

- (a) in the case of a settlement arising under a testamentary disposition of the settlor or on his intestacy, the time of his death, and

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (b) in the case of any other settlement, the time or, where there is more than one, each of the times when he has provided funds directly or indirectly for the purposes of the settlement.
- (4) For the purposes of this section “settlor”, in relation to a settlement, includes any person who has provided or undertaken to provide funds directly or indirectly for the purposes of the settlement.
- (5) In section 824(9) of the Taxes Act 1988 (repayment supplements), for the words “or a United Kingdom trust (as defined in section 231),” there shall be substituted the words “the trustees of a settlement”.
- (6) Subject to subsections (7) to (9) below, this section shall apply for the year 1989-90 and subsequent years of assessment.
- (7) For the purpose of determining the residence of trustees at any time during the year 1989-90, the condition in subsection (2) above shall be regarded as not having been satisfied if none of the trustees of the settlement is resident in the United Kingdom at any time during the period beginning with 1st October 1989 and ending with 5th April 1990.
- (8) This section shall not apply for any of the purposes of section 739 of the Taxes Act 1988 in relation to income payable before 15th June 1989, or for the purposes of subsection (3) of that section in relation to income payable on or after that date if—
 - (a) the capital sum there referred to is received, or the right to receive it is acquired, before that date, and
 - (b) that sum is wholly repaid, or the right to it waived, before 1st October 1989.
- (9) This section shall not apply for any of the purposes of section 740 of the Taxes Act 1988 in relation to benefits received before 15th June 1989; and, in relation to benefits received on or after that date, “relevant income” for those purposes shall include income arising to trustees before 6th April 1989 notwithstanding that one or more of them was not resident outside the United Kingdom, unless they have been charged to tax in respect of it.

111 Residence of personal representatives. **U.K.**

- (1) Where the personal representatives of a deceased person include at least one who is not resident in the United Kingdom as well as at least one who is, then for all the purposes of the Income Tax Acts—
 - (a) if the condition in subsection (2) below is satisfied, the personal representative or representatives not resident in the United Kingdom shall be treated as resident there, and
 - (b) otherwise, the personal representative or representatives resident in the United Kingdom shall be treated as not resident there (but as resident outside the United Kingdom).
- (2) The condition referred to in subsection (1) above is that the deceased person is at his death—
 - (a) resident in the United Kingdom,
 - (b) ordinarily resident there, or
 - (c) domiciled there.
- (3) In this section “personal representatives” means—

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) in relation to England and Wales, the deceased person's personal representatives as defined by section 55 of the ^{M16}Administration of Estates Act 1925;
 - (b) in relation to Scotland, his executor or the judicial factor on his estate;
 - (c) in relation to Northern Ireland, his personal representatives as defined by section 45(1) of the ^{M17}Administration of Estates Act (Northern Ireland) 1955; and
 - (d) in relation to another country or territory, the persons having in relation to him under its law any functions corresponding to the functions for administration purposes of personal representatives under the law of England and Wales.
- (4) In section 824(9) of the Taxes Act 1988 (repayment supplements), for the words from “or, in” to “section 701)” there shall be substituted the words “or personal representatives (within the meaning of section 111 of the Finance Act 1989)”.
- (5) Subject to subsections (6) to (8) below, this section shall apply for the year 1989-90 and subsequent years of assessment.
- (6) For the purpose of determining the residence of personal representatives at any time during the year 1989-90, the condition in subsection (2) above shall be regarded as not having been satisfied if none of the personal representatives is resident in the United Kingdom at any time during the period beginning with 1st October 1989 and ending with 5th April 1990.
- (7) This section shall not apply for any of the purposes of section 739 of the Taxes Act 1988 in relation to income payable before 15th June 1989, or for the purposes of subsection (3) of that section in relation to income payable on or after that date if—
- (a) the capital sum there referred to is received, or the right to receive it is acquired, before that date, and
 - (b) that sum is wholly repaid, or the right to it waived, before 1st October 1989.
- (8) This section shall not apply for any of the purposes of section 740 of the Taxes Act 1988 in relation to benefits received before 15th June 1989 and, in relation to benefits received on or after that date, “relevant income” for those purposes shall include income arising to personal representatives before 6th April 1989 notwithstanding that one or more of them was not resident outside the United Kingdom, unless they have been charged to tax in respect of it.

Marginal Citations

M16 1925 c.23.

M17 1955 c. 24 (N.I.).

Miscellaneous

112 Security: trades etc. **U.K.**

- (1) This section applies in computing, for the purposes of Case I or Case II of Schedule D, the [^{F166}profits] of a trade, profession or vocation carried on by an individual or by a partnership of individuals.

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (2) In a case where this section applies, nothing in section 74(a) or (b) of the Taxes Act 1988 (deductions limited by reference to purposes of trade etc.) shall prevent the deduction of a sum in respect of expenditure incurred in connection with the provision for or use by the individual, or any of the individuals, of a security asset or security service.
- (3) Subsection (2) above shall not apply unless the asset or service is provided or used to meet a threat which—
- (a) is a special threat to the individual's personal physical security, and
 - (b) arises wholly or mainly by virtue of the particular trade, profession or vocation concerned.
- (4) Subsection (2) above shall not apply unless the person incurring the expenditure has as his sole object in doing so the meeting of that threat.
- (5) Subsection (2) above shall not apply in the case of a service unless the benefit resulting to the individual consists wholly or mainly of an improvement of his personal physical security.
- (6) Subsection (2) above shall not apply in the case of an asset unless the person incurring the expenditure intends the asset to be used solely to improve personal physical security.
- (7) But in a case where—
- (a) apart from subsection (6) above, subsection (2) above would apply in the case of an asset, and
 - (b) the person incurring the expenditure intends the asset to be used partly to improve personal physical security,
- subsection (2) shall nevertheless apply, but only as regards the appropriate proportion of the expenditure there mentioned.
- (8) For the purposes of subsection (7) above the appropriate proportion of the expenditure mentioned in subsection (2) above is such proportion of that expenditure as is attributable to the intention of the person incurring it that the asset be used to improve personal physical security.

Textual Amendments

F166 Word in s. 112(1) substituted (31.7.1998) by 1998 c. 36, s. 46(3), Sch. 7 para. 3

Modifications etc. (not altering text)

C40 S. 112 applied (31.7.1998 with effect as mentioned in s. 38(2)(3) of 1998 c. 36) by 1988 c. 1, s. 21A(2) (as substituted by 1998 c. 36, s. 38(1), Sch. 5 Pt. I paras. 4, 73)

113 Security: trades etc. (supplementary). **U.K.**

- (1) For the purposes of section 112 above—
- (a) a security asset is an asset which improves personal security,
 - (b) a security service is a service which improves personal security,
 - (c) references to an asset do not include references to a car, a ship or an aircraft,

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (d) references to an asset or service do not include references to a dwelling or grounds appurtenant to a dwelling, and
 - (e) references to an asset include references to equipment and a structure (such as a wall).
- (2) If the person incurring the expenditure intends the asset to be used solely to improve personal physical security, but there is another use for the asset which is incidental to improving personal physical security, that other use shall be ignored in construing section 112(6) above.
- (3) The fact that an asset or service improves the personal physical security of any member of the family or household of the individual concerned, as well as that of the individual, shall not prevent section 112(2) above from applying.
- (4) For the purposes of section 112 above in its application to an asset, it is immaterial whether or not the asset becomes affixed to land (whether constituting a dwelling or otherwise).
- (5) For the purposes of section 112 above in its application to an asset, it is immaterial whether or not the individual concerned is or becomes entitled to the property in the asset or (in the case of a fixture) an estate or interest in the land concerned.
- (6) Section 112 above applies where expenditure is incurred on or after 6th April 1989.

Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C41** S. 113 applied (31.7.1998 with effect as mentioned in s. 38(2)(3) of 1998 c. 36) by 1988 c. 1, s. 21A(2) (as substituted by 1998 c. 36, s. 38(1), Sch. 5 Pt. I paras. 4, 73)

114 Relief for pre-trading expenditure. U.K.

- (1) In section 401(1) of the Taxes Act 1988 (which gives relief for expenditure incurred by a person within three years before he begins to carry on a trade, profession or vocation), for the word “three” there shall be substituted the word “five”.
- (2) This section shall have effect where the time when the person begins to carry on the trade, profession or vocation falls after the end of March 1989.

115 Double taxation: tax credits. U.K.

- (1) Where any arrangements having effect by virtue of section 788 of the Taxes Act 1988 provide —
- (a) for persons who are resident outside the United Kingdom and who receive distributions from companies resident in the United Kingdom to be entitled to tax credits, and
 - (b) for the amount paid to such a person by way of tax credit to be determined by reference to the amount to which an individual resident in the United Kingdom would have been entitled, subject to a deduction calculated by reference to the aggregate of the amount or value of the distribution and the amount of the tax credit paid,

the arrangements shall be construed as providing for that deduction to be calculated by reference to the gross amount or value of the distribution and tax credit, without any allowance for the deduction itself.

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (2) This section shall have effect in relation to payments made before the passing of this Act as well as those made after that time, except that it shall not affect—
 - (a) the judgment of any court given before 25th October 1988, or
 - (b) the law to be applied in proceedings on appeal to the Court of Appeal or the House of Lords where the judgment of the High Court or the Court of Session which is in issue was given before that date.

^{F167} **116** **U.K.**

Textual Amendments

F167 S. 116 repealed (29.4.1996 with effect as mentioned in s. 105(1) of the amending Act) by 1996 c. 8, s. 205, **Sch. 41 Pt. V(3)**, note

CHAPTER II U.K.

CAPITAL ALLOWANCES

117– ^{F168} **U.K.**
120

Textual Amendments

F168 Ss. 117–120 repealed by Capital Allowance Act 1990 (c.1, SIF 63:1), s. 164(4)(5), **Sch. 2**

^{F169} **121** **U.K.**

Textual Amendments

F169 S. 121 repealed (22.3.2001 with effect as mentioned in s. 579(1) of the amending Act) by 2001 c. 2, s. 580, **Sch. 4**

CHAPTER III U.K.

CAPITAL GAINS

Exemptions

^{F170} **122** **U.K.**

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

Textual Amendments

F170 S. 122 repealed (6.3.1992 with effect as mentioned in s. 289(1)(2) of the repealing Act) by [Taxation of Chargeable Gains Act 1992 \(c. 12\)](#), ss. 289, 290, **Sch. 12** (with ss. 201(3), Sch. 11 paras. 22, 26(2), 27)

123 Increase of chattel exemption. U.K.

(1) In the following enactments, namely—

- ^{F171}(a)
 - (b) section 12(2)(b) of the ^{M18}Taxes Management Act 1970 (information about assets acquired), and
 - (c) section 25(7) of that Act (information about assets disposed of),
- for “£3,000”, in each place where it occurs, there shall be substituted “£6,000”.

(2) This section applies to disposals on or after 6th April 1989 and accordingly, in relation to subsection (1)(b) above, to assets acquired on or after that date.

Textual Amendments

F171 S. 123(1)(a) repealed (6.3.1992 with effect as mentioned in s. 289(1)(2) of the repealing Act) by [Taxation of Chargeable Gains Act 1992 \(c. 12\)](#), ss. 289, 290, **Sch. 12** (with ss. 201(3), Sch. 11 paras. 22, 26(2), 27)

Marginal Citations

M18 1970 c. 9.

Gifts

^{F172}**124** **U.K.**

Textual Amendments

F172 S. 124 repealed (6.3.1992 with effect as mentioned in s. 289(1)(2) of the repealing Act) by [Taxation of Chargeable Gains Act 1992 \(c. 12\)](#), ss. 289, 290, **Sch. 12** (with ss. 201(3), Sch. 11 paras. 22, 26(2), 27)

^{F173}**125** **U.K.**

Textual Amendments

F173 S. 125 repealed (6.3.1992 with effect as mentioned in s. 289(1)(2) of the repealing Act) by [Taxation of Chargeable Gains Act 1992 \(c. 12\)](#), ss. 289, 290, **Sch. 12** (with ss. 201(3), Sch. 11 paras. 22, 26(2), 27)

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

Non-residents etc.

^{F174} **126** **U.K.**

Textual Amendments

F174 S. 126 repealed (6.3.1992 with effect as mentioned in s. 289(1)(2) of the repealing Act) by [Taxation of Chargeable Gains Act 1992 \(c. 12\)](#), ss. 289, 290, **Sch.12** (with ss. 201(3), Sch. 11 paras. 22, 26(2), 27)

^{F175} **127** **U.K.**

Textual Amendments

F175 S. 127 repealed (6.3.1992 with effect as mentioned in s. 289(1)(2) of the repealing Act) by [Taxation of Chargeable Gains Act 1992 \(c. 12\)](#), ss. 289, 290, **Sch.12** (with ss. 201(3), Sch. 11 paras. 22, 26(2), 27)

^{F176} **128** **U.K.**

Textual Amendments

F176 S. 128 repealed (6.3.1992 with effect as mentioned in s. 289(1)(2) of the repealing Act) by [Taxation of Chargeable Gains Act 1992 \(c. 12\)](#), ss. 289, 290, **Sch.12** (with ss. 201(3), Sch. 11 paras. 22, 26(2), 27)

^{F177} **129** **U.K.**

Textual Amendments

F177 S. 129 repealed (6.3.1992 with effect as mentioned in s. 289(1)(2) of the repealing Act) by [Taxation of Chargeable Gains Act 1992 \(c. 12\)](#), ss. 289, 290, **Sch.12** (with ss. 201(3), Sch. 11 paras. 22, 26(2), 27)

^{F178} **130** **U.K.**

Textual Amendments

F178 S. 130 repealed (6.3.1992 with effect as mentioned in s. 289(1)(2) of the repealing Act) by [Taxation of Chargeable Gains Act 1992 \(c. 12\)](#), ss. 289, 290, **Sch.12** (with ss. 201(3), Sch. 11 paras. 22, 26(2), 27)

^{F179} **131** **U.K.**

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

Textual Amendments

F179 S. 131 repealed (6.3.1992 with effect as mentioned in s. 289(1)(2) of the repealing Act) by [Taxation of Chargeable Gains Act 1992 \(c. 12\)](#), ss. 289, 290, [Sch.12](#) (with ss. 201(3), Sch. 11 paras. 22, 26(2), 27)

F180 **132** **U.K.**

Textual Amendments

F180 S. 132 repealed (6.3.1992 with effect as mentioned in s. 289(1)(2) of the repealing Act) by [Taxation of Chargeable Gains Act 1992 \(c. 12\)](#), ss. 289, 290, [Sch.12](#) (with ss. 201(3), Sch. 11 paras. 22, 26(2), 27)

F181 **133** **U.K.**

Textual Amendments

F181 S. 133 repealed (6.3.1992 with effect as mentioned in s. 289(1)(2) of the repealing Act) by [Taxation of Chargeable Gains Act 1992 \(c. 12\)](#), ss. 289, 290, [Sch. 12](#) (with ss. 201(3), Sch. 11 paras. 22, 26(2), 27)

F182 **134** **U.K.**

Textual Amendments

F182 S. 134 repealed (6.3.1992 with effect as mentioned in s. 289(1)(2) of the repealing Act) by [Taxation of Chargeable Gains Act 1992 \(c. 12\)](#), ss. 289, 290, [Sch.12](#) (with ss. 201(3), Sch. 11 paras. 22, 26(2), 27)

Value shifting and groups of companies

F183 **135** **U.K.**

Textual Amendments

F183 S. 135 repealed (6.3.1992 with effect as mentioned in s. 289(1)(2) of the repealing Act) by [Taxation of Chargeable Gains Act 1992 \(c. 12\)](#), ss. 289, 290, [Sch.12](#) (with ss. 201(3), Sch. 11 paras. 22, 26(2), 27)

F184 **136** **U.K.**

Textual Amendments

F184 S. 136 repealed (6.3.1992 with effect as mentioned in s. 289(1)(2) of the repealing Act) by [Taxation of Chargeable Gains Act 1992 \(c. 12\)](#), ss. 289, 290, [Sch.12](#) (with ss. 201(3), Sch. 11 paras. 22, 26(2), 27)

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

^{F185} **137** **U.K.**

Textual Amendments

F185 S. 137 repealed (6.3.1992 with effect as mentioned in s. 289(1)(2) of the repealing Act) by [Taxation of Chargeable Gains Act 1992 \(c. 12\)](#), ss. 289, 290, **Sch. 12** (with ss. 201(3), Sch. 11 paras. 22, 26(2), 27)

^{F186} **138** **U.K.**

Textual Amendments

F186 S. 138 repealed (6.3.1992 with effect as mentioned in s. 289(1)(2) of the repealing Act) by [Taxation of Chargeable Gains Act 1992 \(c. 12\)](#), ss. 289, 290, **Sch. 12** (with ss. 201(3), Sch. 11 paras. 22, 26(2), 27)

Miscellaneous

^{F187} **139** **U.K.**

Textual Amendments

F187 S. 139 repealed (6.3.1992 with effect as mentioned in s. 289(1)(2) of the repealing Act) by [Taxation of Chargeable Gains Act 1992 \(c. 12\)](#), ss. 289, 290, **Sch. 12** (with ss. 201(3), Sch. 11 paras. 22, 26(2), 27)

^{F188} **140** **U.K.**

Textual Amendments

F188 S. 140 repealed (6.3.1992 with effect as mentioned in s. 289(1)(2) of the repealing Act) by [Taxation of Chargeable Gains Act 1992 \(c. 12\)](#), ss. 289, 290, **Sch.12** (with ss. 201(3), Sch. 11 paras. 22, 26(2), 27)

^{F189} **141** **U.K.**

Textual Amendments

F189 S. 141 repealed (6.3.1992 with effect as mentioned in s. 289(1)(2) of the repealing Act) by [Taxation of Chargeable Gains Act 1992 \(c. 12\)](#), ss. 289, 290, **Sch.12** (with ss. 201(3), Sch. 11 paras. 22, 26(2), 27)

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

CHAPTER IV **U.K.**

MANAGEMENT

Information

142 Power to call for documents and information. **U.K.**

- (1) Section 20 of the ^{M19} Taxes Management Act 1970 (power to call for documents of taxpayer and others) shall be amended in accordance with subsections (2) to (8) below.
- (2) In subsection (1), for the words “a person” onwards there shall be substituted the words “a person—
 - (a) to deliver to him such documents as are in the person’s possession or power and as (in the inspector’s reasonable opinion) contain, or may contain, information relevant to—
 - (i) any tax liability to which the person is or may be subject, or
 - (ii) the amount of any such liability, or
 - (b) to furnish to him such particulars as the inspector may reasonably require as being relevant to, or to the amount of, any such liability.”
- (3) In subsection (2), for the words “a person” onwards there shall be substituted the words “a person
 - (a) to deliver to a named officer of the Board such documents as are in the person’s possession or power and as (in the Board’s reasonable opinion) contain, or may contain, information relevant to—
 - (i) any tax liability to which the person is or may be subject, or
 - (ii) the amount of any such liability, or
 - (b) to furnish to a named officer of the Board such particulars as the Board may reasonably require as being relevant to, or to the amount of, any such liability.”
- (4) In subsection (3)—
 - (a) for the words “of the persons who in relation to the taxpayer are subject to this subsection” there shall be substituted the words “other person”, and
 - (b) at the end there shall be added the words “; and the persons who may be required to deliver or make available a document under this subsection include the Director of Savings.”
- (5) Subsections (4) and (5) shall be omitted.
- (6) In subsection (6)—
 - (a) for the words “under subsections (3) and (4)” there shall be substituted the words “for the purposes of this section”, and
 - (b) the words “and in relation” onwards shall be omitted.
- (7) For subsection (8) there shall be substituted—

“(8) Subject to subsection (8A) below, a notice under subsection (3) above shall name the taxpayer with whose liability the inspector (or, where section 20B(3) below applies, the Board is concerned.”
- (8) After subsection (8B) there shall be inserted—

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- “(8C) In this section references to documents do not include—
- (a) personal records (as defined in section 12 of the Police and Criminal Evidence Act 1984), or
 - (b) journalistic material (as defined in section 13 of that Act),
- and references to particulars do not include particulars contained in such personal records or journalistic material.
- (8D) Subject to subsection (8C) above, references in this section to documents and particulars are to those specified or described in the notice in question; and—
- (a) the notice shall require documents to be delivered (or delivered or made available), or particulars to be furnished, within such time (which, except in the case of a notice under subsection (2) above, shall not be less than thirty days after the date of the notice) as may be specified in the notice; and
 - (b) the person to whom they are delivered, made available or furnished may take copies of them or of extracts from them.”
- (9) In section 12(3) of the ^{M20} National Savings Bank Act 1971, for the words “20(4)(b)” onwards there shall be substituted the words “20(3) of that Act (requirement to deliver or make available documents relating to liability of a taxpayer).”
- (10) This section shall apply with respect to notices given on or after the day on which this Act is passed.

Marginal Citations

M19 1970 c. 9.

M20 1971 c. 29.

143 Power to call for papers of tax accountant. **U.K.**

- (1) In section 20A of the ^{M21} Taxes Management Act 1970 (power to call for papers of tax accountant) for the last sentence of subsection (1) there shall be substituted—
- “(1A) The reference to documents in subsection (1) above does not include—
- (a) personal records (as defined in section 12 of the Police and Criminal Evidence Act 1984), or
 - (b) journalistic material (as defined in section 13 of that Act).
- (1B) Subject to subsection (1A) above, the reference to documents in subsection (1) above is to those specified or described in the notice in question; and—
- (a) the notice shall require documents to be delivered within such time (which shall not be less than thirty days after the date of the notice) as may be specified in the notice; and
 - (b) the inspector may take copies of them or of extracts from them.”
- (2) This section shall apply with respect to notices given on or after the day on which this Act is passed.

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

Marginal Citations

M21 1970 c. 9.

144 Restrictions on powers under TMA ss.20 and 20A. **U.K.**

- (1) Section 20B of the ^{M22} Taxes Management Act 1970 (restrictions on powers under sections 20 and 20A) shall be amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (1), after the word “question” there shall be inserted the words “, or to furnish the particulars in question”.
- (3) After that subsection there shall be inserted—
 - “(1A) Subject to subsection (1B) below, where a notice is given to any person under section 20(3) the inspector shall give a copy of the notice to the taxpayer to whom it relates.
 - (1B) If, on an application by the inspector, a General or Special Commissioner so directs, a copy of a notice under section 20(3) need not be given to the taxpayer to whom it relates; but such a direction shall not be given unless the Commissioner is satisfied that the inspector has reasonable grounds for suspecting the taxpayer of fraud.”
- (4) In subsection (2), after the words “deliver documents”, in the first place where they occur, there shall be inserted the words “or furnish particulars”.
- (5) In subsection (5), for the words from “if” to “or company” there shall be substituted the words “does not oblige a person”.
- (6) In subsection (7), the words from “to a person” to “daughter” shall be omitted.
- (7) For subsection (9) there shall be substituted—
 - “(9) Subject to subsections (11) and (12) below, a notice under section 20(3) or (8A)—
 - (a) does not oblige a person who has been appointed as an auditor for the purposes of any enactment to deliver or make available documents which are his property and were created by him or on his behalf for or in connection with the performance of his functions under that enactment, and
 - (b) does not oblige a tax adviser to deliver or make available documents which are his property and consist of relevant communications.
 - (10) In subsections (9) above “relevant communications” means communications between the tax adviser and—
 - (a) a person in relation to whose tax affairs he has been appointed, or
 - (b) any other tax adviser of such a person,the purpose of which is the giving or obtaining of advice about any of those tax affairs; and in subsection (9) above and this subsection “tax adviser” means a person appointed to give advice about the tax affairs of another person (whether appointed directly by that other person or by another tax adviser of his).

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (11) Subject to subsection (13) below, subsection (9) above shall not have effect in relation to any document which contains information explaining any information, return, accounts or other document which the person to whom the notice is given has, as tax accountant, assisted any client of his in preparing for, or delivering to, the inspector or the Board.
- (12) Subject to subsection (13) below, in the case of a notice under section 20(8A) subsection (9) above shall not have effect in relation to any document which contains information giving the identity or address of any taxpayer to whom the notice relates or of any person who has acted on behalf of any such person.
- (13) Subsection (9) above is not disapplied by subsection (11) or (12) above in the case of any document if—
- (a) the information within subsection (11) or (12) is contained in some other document, and
 - (b) either—
 - (i) that other document, or a copy of it, has been delivered to the inspector or the Board, or
 - (ii) that other document has been inspected by an officer of the Board.
- (14) Where subsection (9) above is disapplied by subsection (11) or (12) above in the case of a document, the person to whom the notice is given either shall deliver the document to the inspector or make it available for inspection by an officer of the Board or shall—
- (a) deliver to the inspector (or, where subsection (3) above applies, the Board) a copy (which is photographic or otherwise by way of facsimile) of any parts of the document which contain the information within subsection (11) or (12), and
 - (b) if so required by the inspector (or, as the case may be, the Board), make available for inspection by a named officer of the Board such parts of the document as contain that information;
- and failure to comply with any requirement under paragraph (b) above shall constitute a failure to comply with the notice.”
- (8) This section shall apply with respect to notices given on or after the day on which this Act is passed.

Marginal Citations

M22 1970c. 9.

145 Falsification etc. of documents. U.K.

- (1) After section 20B of the ^{M23}Taxes Management Act 1970 there shall be inserted—

“20BB Falsification etc. of documents.

- (1) Subject to subsections (2) to (4) below, a person shall be guilty of an offence if he intentionally falsifies, conceals, destroys or otherwise disposes of, or

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

causes or permits the falsification, concealment, destruction or disposal of, a document which—

- (a) he has been required by a notice under section 20 or 20A above, or
- (b) he has been given an opportunity in accordance with section 20B(1) above,

to deliver, or to deliver or make available for inspection.

(2) A person does not commit an offence under subsection (1) above if he acts—

- (a) with the written permission of a General or Special Commissioner, the inspector or an officer of the Board,
- (b) after the document has been delivered or, in a case within section 20(3) or (8A) above, inspected, or
- (c) after a copy has been delivered in accordance with section 20B(4) or (14) above and the original has been inspected.

(3) A person does not commit an offence under subsection (1)(a) above if he acts after the end of the period of two years beginning with the date on which the notice is given, unless before the end of that period the inspector or an officer of the Board has notified the person in writing that the notice has not been complied with to his satisfaction.

(4) A person does not commit an offence under subsection (1) (b) above if he acts—

- (a) after the end of the period of six months beginning with the date on which an opportunity to deliver the document was given, or
- (b) after an application for consent to a notice being given in relation to the document has been refused.

(5) A person guilty of an offence under subsection (1) above shall be liable—

- (a) on summary conviction, to a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum;
- (b) on conviction on indictment, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding two years or to a fine or to both.”

(2) This section shall apply to any falsification, concealment, destruction or disposal of a document occurring on or after the day on which this Act is passed.

Marginal Citations

M23 1970 c. 9.

146 Entry with warrant to obtain documents. **U.K.**

(1) Section 20C of the ^{M24}Taxes Management Act 1970 (entry with warrant to obtain documents) shall be amended as follows.

(2) In subsection (1)—

- (a) for the words “any form of fraud” there shall be substituted the words “serious fraud”, and
- (b) for the words “has been” there shall be substituted the words “is being, has been or is about to be”.

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

(3) After that subsection there shall be inserted—

“(1A) Without prejudice to the generality of the concept of serious fraud—

- (a) any offence which involves fraud is for the purposes of this section an offence involving serious fraud if its commission had led, or is intended or likely to lead, either to substantial financial gain to any person or to serious prejudice to the proper assessment or collection of tax; and
- (b) an offence which, if considered alone, would not be regarded as involving serious fraud may nevertheless be so regarded if there is reasonable ground for suspecting that it forms part of a course of conduct which is, or but for its detection would be, likely to result in serious prejudice to the proper assessment or collection of tax.

(1B) The powers conferred by a warrant under this section shall not be exercisable—

- (a) by more than such number of officers of the Board as may be specified in the warrant;
- (b) outside such times of day as may be so specified;
- (c) if the warrant so provides, otherwise than in the presence of a constable in uniform.”

(4) For subsections (3) to (5) there shall be substituted—

“(3) An officer who enters the premises under the authority of a warrant under this section may—

- (a) take with him such other persons as appear to him to be necessary;
- (b) seize and remove any things whatsoever found there which he has reasonable cause to believe may be required as evidence for the purposes of proceedings in respect of such an offence as is mentioned in subsection (1) above; and
- (c) search or cause to be searched any person found on the premises whom he has reasonable cause to believe to be in possession of any such things;

but no person shall be searched except by a person of the same sex.

(4) Nothing in subsection (3) above authorises the seizure and removal of documents in the possession of a barrister, advocate or solicitor with respect to which a claim to professional privilege could be maintained.

(5) An officer of the Board seeking to exercise the powers conferred by a warrant under this section or, if there is more than one such officer, that one of them who is in charge of the search—

- (a) if the occupier of the premises concerned is present at the time the search is to begin, shall supply a copy of the warrant endorsed with his name to the occupier;
- (b) if at that time the occupier is not present but a person who appears to the officer to be in charge of the premises is present, shall supply such a copy to that person; and
- (c) if neither paragraph (a) nor paragraph (b) above applies, shall leave such a copy in a prominent place on the premises.

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (6) Where entry to premises has been made with a warrant under this section, and the officer making the entry has seized any things under the authority of the warrant, he shall endorse on or attach to the warrant a list of the things seized.
 - (7) Subsections (10) to (12) of section 16 of the Police and Criminal Evidence Act 1984 (return, retention and inspection of warrants) apply to a warrant under this section (together with any list endorsed on or attached to it under subsection (6) above) as they apply to a warrant issued to a constable under any enactment.
 - (8) Subsection (7) above extends to England and Wales only.”
- (5) This section shall apply with respect to warrants issued on or after the day on which this Act is passed.

Marginal Citations

M24 1970 c. 9.

147 Procedure where documents etc. are removed. **U.K.**

- (1) The following section shall be inserted after section 20C of the ^{M25}Taxes Management Act 1970—

“20CC Procedure where documents etc. are removed.

- (1) An officer of the Board who removes anything in the exercise of the power conferred by section 20C above shall, if so requested by a person showing himself—
 - (a) to be the occupier of premises from which it was removed, or
 - (b) to have had custody or control of it immediately before the removal, provide that person with a record of what he removed.
- (2) The officer of the Board shall provide the record within a reasonable time from the making of the request for it.
- (3) Where anything which has been removed by an officer of the Board as mentioned in subsection (1) above is of such a nature that a photograph or copy of it would be sufficient—
 - (a) for use as evidence at a trial for an offence, or
 - (b) for forensic examination or for investigation in connection with an offence,it shall not be retained longer than is necessary to establish that fact and to obtain the photograph or copy.
- (4) Subject to subsection (8) below, if a request for permission to be granted access to anything which—
 - (a) has been removed by an officer of the Board, and
 - (b) is retained by the Board for the purpose of investigating an offence,is made to the officer in overall charge of the investigation by a person who had custody or control of the thing immediately before it was so removed or by

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

someone acting on behalf of any such person, the officer shall allow the person who made the request access to it under the supervision of an officer of the Board.

- (5) Subject to subsection (8) below, if a request for a photograph or copy of any such thing is made to the officer in overall charge of the investigation by a person who had custody or control of the thing immediately before it was removed, or by someone acting on behalf of any such person, the officer shall—
- (a) allow the person who made the request access to it under the supervision of an officer of the Board for the purpose of photographing it or copying it, or
 - (b) photograph or copy it, or cause it to be photographed or copied.
- (6) Where anything is photographed or copied under subsection (5)(b) above the photograph or copy shall be supplied to the person who made the request.
- (7) The photograph or copy shall be supplied within a reasonable time from the making of the request.
- (8) There is no duty under this section to grant access to, or to supply a photograph or copy of, anything if the officer in overall charge of the investigation for the purposes of which it was removed has reasonable grounds for believing that to do so would prejudice—
- (a) that investigation;
 - (b) the investigation of an offence other than the offence for the purposes of the investigation of which the thing was removed; or
 - (c) any criminal proceedings which may be brought as a result of—
 - (i) the investigation of which he is in charge, or
 - (ii) any such investigation as is mentioned in paragraph (b) above.
- (9) Any reference in this section to the officer in overall charge of the investigation is a reference to the person whose name and address are endorsed on the warrant concerned as being the officer so in charge.”
- (2) This section shall apply with respect to warrants issued on or after the day on which this Act is passed.

Marginal Citations

M25 1970c. 9.

148 Interpretation. U.K.

- (1) Section 20D of the ^{M26}Taxes Management Act 1970 shall be amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (2), for the words “of returns or accounts to be made or delivered by the other” there shall be substituted the words “or delivery of any information, return, accounts or other document which he knows will be, or is or are likely to be, used”.
- (3) For subsection (3) there shall be substituted—

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- “(3) Without prejudice to section 127 of the Finance Act 1988, in sections 20 to 20CC above “document” has, subject to sections 20(8C) and 20A(1A), the same meaning as it has—
- (a) in relation to England and Wales, in Part I of the Civil Evidence Act 1968,
 - (b) in relation to Scotland, in Part III of the Law Reform (Miscellaneous Provisions) (Scotland) Act 1968, and
 - (c) in relation to Northern Ireland, in Part I of the Civil Evidence Act (Northern Ireland) 1971.”
- (4) Subsection (3) above shall not affect the meaning of “business” in sections 20 and 20C of the ^{M27}Taxes Management Act 1970 before the coming into force of sections 142 and 146 above.

Marginal Citations

- M26** 1970 c. 9.
M27 1970 c. 9.

Assessments, claims etc.

149 Assessments founded on fraudulent or negligent conduct. U.K.

- (1) The following section shall be substituted for section 36 of the Taxes Management Act 1970—

“36 Fraudulent or negligent conduct.

- (1) An assessment on any person (in this section referred to as “the person in default”) for the purpose of making good to the Crown a loss of tax attributable to his fraudulent or negligent conduct or the fraudulent or negligent conduct of a person acting on his behalf may be made at any time not later than twenty years after the end of the chargeable period to which the assessment relates.
 - (2) Where the person in default is an individual who carried on a trade or profession in partnership with another individual, or with other persons at least one of whom is an individual, at any time in the year for which the assessment is made, an assessment in respect of the profits or gains of the trade or profession for the purpose mentioned in subsection (1) above may be made not only on the person in default but also on his partner or, as the case may be, on any of his partners who is an individual.
 - (3) If the person on whom the assessment is made so requires, in determining the amount of the tax to be charged for any chargeable period in any assessment made for the purpose mentioned in subsection (1) above, effect shall be given to any relief or allowance to which he would have been entitled for that chargeable period on a claim or application made within the time allowed by the Taxes Acts.”
- (2) Sections 37 to 39 (special provisions as to “neglect”) and section 41 (leave required for certain assessments) of the Taxes Management Act 1970 shall cease to have effect.

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (3) The words “section 36” shall be substituted—
- (a) for the words “sections 36, 37 and 39” in section 30(6) of the ^{M28}Taxes Management Act 1970 (tax repaid in error etc.),
 - (b) for the words “sections 37 to 39” in section 118(3) of that Act (effect under law of Scotland of assessment in partnership name),
 - [^{F190}(c) for the words “sections 36 and 39” in paragraph 10(1) of Schedule 13 to the Taxes Act 1988 (assessments to advance corporation tax),] and
 - (d) for the words “sections 36 and 37” in paragraph 10(1) of Schedule 16 to that Act (assessments to income tax on company payments which are not distributions).
- (4) The words “fraudulent or negligent conduct” shall be substituted—
- (a) for the words “fraud, wilful default or neglect” in—
 - (i) section 37A of the Taxes Management Act 1970 (married couples),
 - (ii) section 40(2) of that Act (assessment on personal representatives), and
 - (iii) paragraph 9 of Schedule 16A to the ^{M29}Finance Act 1973 and of Schedule 19A to the Taxes Act 1988 (Lloyd’s), and
 - (b) for the words “fraud and wilful default) and section 37 of that Act (neglect” in section 307(5) of the Taxes Act 1988 (assessments for withdrawing relief under Chapter III of Part VII of that Act).
- (5) In section 105 of the Taxes Management Act 1970 (admissibility of evidence), for the words “fraud or default” and the words “fraud or wilful default” there shall be substituted the words “fraudulent conduct”.
- (6) In paragraph 9 of Schedule 16A to the Finance Act 1973 and of Schedule 19A to the Taxes Act 1988, for “37, 40 and 41” there shall be substituted “and 40”.
- (7) Nothing in this section shall affect the making of assessments—
- (a) for years of assessment before the year 1983-84, or
 - (b) for accounting periods which ended before 1st April 1983.

Textual Amendments

F190 S. 149(3)(c) repealed (31.7.1998 with effect in accordance with Sch. 3 of the amending Act) by 1998 c. 36, s. 165, Sch. 27 Pt. III(2), note

Marginal Citations

M28 1970 c.9.

M29 1973 c. 51.

150 Further assessments: claims etc. **U.K.**

- (1) The following sections shall be inserted after section 43 of the Taxes Management Act 1970—

“43A Further assessments: claims etc.

- (1) This section applies where—

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) by virtue of section 29(3) of this Act an assessment is made on any person for a chargeable period, and
 - (b) the assessment is not made for the purpose of making good to the Crown any loss of tax attributable to his fraudulent or negligent conduct or the fraudulent or negligent conduct of a person acting on his behalf.
 - (2) Without prejudice to section 43(2) above but subject to section 43B below, where this section applies—
 - (a) any relevant claim, election, application or notice which could have been made or given within the time allowed by the Taxes Acts may be made or given at any time within one year from the end of the chargeable period in which the assessment is made, and
 - (b) any relevant claim, election, application or notice previously made or given may at any such time be revoked or varied—
 - (i) in the same manner as it was made or given, and
 - (ii) by or with the consent of the same person or persons who made, gave or consented to it (or, in the case of any such person who has died, by or with the consent of his personal representatives),except where by virtue of any enactment it is irrevocable.
 - (3) For the purposes of this section and section 43B below, a claim, election, application or notice is relevant in relation to an assessment for a chargeable period if—
 - (a) it relates to that chargeable period or is made or given by reference to an event occurring in that chargeable period, and
 - (b) it or, as the case may be, its revocation or variation has or could have the effect of reducing any of the liabilities mentioned in subsection (4) below.
 - (4) The liabilities referred to in subsection (3) above are—
 - (a) the increased liability to tax resulting from the assessment,
 - (b) any other liability to tax of the person concerned for—
 - (i) the chargeable period to which the assessment relates, or
 - (ii) any chargeable period which follows that chargeable period and ends not later than one year after the end of the chargeable period in which the assessment is made.
 - (5) Where a claim, election, application or notice is made, given, revoked or varied by virtue of subsection (2) above, all such adjustments shall be made, whether by way of discharge or repayment of tax or the making of assessments or otherwise, as are required to take account of the effect of the taking of that action on any person's liability to tax for any chargeable period.
 - (6) The provisions of this Act relating to appeals against decisions on claims shall apply with any necessary modifications to a decision on the revocation or variation of a claim by virtue of subsection (2) above.

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

43B Limits on application of section 43A.

(1) If the effect of the exercise by any person of a power conferred by section 43A(2) above—

- (a) to make or give a claim, election, application or notice, or
- (b) to revoke or vary a claim, election, application or notice previously made or given,

would be to alter the liability to tax of another person, that power may not be exercised except with the consent in writing of that other person or, where he has died, his personal representatives.

(2) Where—

- (a) a power conferred by subsection (2) of section 43A above is exercised in consequence of an assessment made on a person, and
- (b) the exercise of the power increases the liability to tax of another person,

that section shall not apply by reason of any assessment made because of that increased liability.

(3) In any case where—

- (a) one or more relevant claims, elections, applications or notices are made, given, revoked or varied by virtue of the application of section 43A above in the case of an assessment, and
- (b) the total of the reductions in liability to tax which, apart from this subsection, would result from the action mentioned in paragraph (a) above would exceed the additional liability to tax resulting from the assessment,

the excess shall not be available to reduce any liability to tax.

(4) Where subsection (3) above has the effect of limiting either the reduction in a person's liability to tax for more than one period or the reduction in the liability to tax of more than one person, the limited amount shall be apportioned between the periods or persons concerned—

- (a) except where paragraph (b) below applies, in such manner as may be specified by the inspector by notice in writing to the person or persons concerned, or
- (b) where the person concerned gives (or the persons concerned jointly give) notice in writing to the inspector within the relevant period, in such manner as may be specified in the notice given by the person or persons concerned.

(5) For the purposes of paragraph (b) of subsection (4) above the relevant period is the period of 30 days beginning with the day on which notice under paragraph (a) of that subsection is given to the person concerned or, where more than one person is concerned, the latest date on which such notice is given to any of them.”

(2) This section shall apply in relation to any assessment notice of which is issued on or after the day on which this Act is passed.

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

151 Assessment of trustees etc. **U.K.**

(1) Income tax chargeable in respect of income arising to the trustees of a settlement, or to the personal representatives of a deceased person, may be assessed and charged on and in the name of any one or more of the relevant trustees or, as the case may be, the relevant personal representatives.

[^{F191}(2) In this section “the relevant trustees”—

- (a) in relation to any income, other than gains treated as arising under Chapter II of Part XIII of the Taxes Act 1988, means the trustees to whom the income arises and any subsequent trustees of the settlement; and
- (b) in relation to gains treated as arising under Chapter II of Part XIII of the Taxes Act 1988, means the trustees in the year of assessment in which the gains arise and any subsequent trustees of the settlement;

and “the relevant personal representatives” has a corresponding meaning.]

(3) In this section “personal representatives” has the same meaning as in section 111 of this Act.

(4) This section shall be deemed always to have had effect.

Textual Amendments

F191 S. 151(2) substituted (31.7.1998 with effect as mentioned in Sch. 14 para. 7(3)(4)(5) of the amending Act) by 1998 c. 36, s. 86, Sch. 14 para. 6

Distress and poinding etc.

152 Distress for non-payment of tax. **U.K.**

(1) Section 61 of the ^{M30}Taxes Management Act 1970 (distress) shall be amended as follows.

(2) In subsection (1), for the words “the collector shall” onwards there shall be substituted the words “the collector may distrain upon the goods and chattels of the person charged (in this section referred to as “the person in default”).”

(3) In subsection (2), for the words from “a collector” to “Commissioners” there shall be substituted the words “a justice of the peace, on being satisfied by information on oath that there is reasonable ground for believing that a person is neglecting or refusing to pay a sum charged, may issue a warrant in writing authorising a collector to”.

(4) In subsection (4), for the words “neglecting or refusing to pay” there shall be substituted the words “in default”.

(5) In subsection (5)—

- (a) for the word “aforesaid” there shall be substituted the words “in default”,
- (b) the words “within the said five days” shall be omitted,
- (c) for the words from “two or more inhabitants of the parish” to “sufficient persons” there shall be substituted the words “one or more independent persons appointed by the collector”, and
- (d) the words from “The costs” to “the collector, and” shall be omitted.

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

(6) The following subsection shall be added after that subsection—

“(6) The Treasury may by regulations make provision with respect to—

- (a) the fees chargeable on or in connection with the levying of distress, and
 - (b) the costs and charges recoverable where distress has been levied;
- and any such regulations shall be made by statutory instrument which shall be subject to annulment in pursuance of a resolution of the House of Commons.”

(7) This section shall come into force on such day as the Treasury may by order made by statutory instrument appoint.

Marginal Citations

M30 1970 c. 9.

153 Priority in cases of distraint by others. U.K.

(1) Section 62 of the ^{M31}Taxes Management Act 1970 (priority of claim for tax) shall be amended as follows.

(2) In subsection (1)—

- (a) for the words from the beginning to “shall be” there shall be substituted the words “If at any time at which any goods or chattels belonging to any person (in this section referred to as “the person in default”) are”,
- (b) for the word “unless” there shall be substituted the words “the person in default is in arrears in respect of any such sums as are referred to in subsection (1A) below, the goods or chattels may not be so taken unless on demand made by the collector”, and
- (c) for the words “arrears of tax” onwards there shall be substituted the words “such sums as have fallen due at or before the date of seizure.”

(3) The following subsection shall be inserted after that subsection—

“(1A) The sums referred to in subsection (1) above are—

- (a) sums due from the person in default on account of deductions of income tax from emoluments paid during the period of twelve months next before the date of seizure, being deductions which the person in default was liable to make under section 203 of the principal Act (pay as you earn) less the amount of the repayments of income tax which he was liable to make during that period; and
- (b) sums due from the person in default in respect of deductions required to be made by him for that period under section 559 of the principal Act (sub-contractors in the construction industry).”

(4) In subsection (2)—

- (a) for the words from the beginning to “the collector shall” there shall be substituted the words “If the sums referred to in subsection (1) above are not paid within ten days of the date of the demand referred to in that subsection, the collector may”,

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (b) for the words “shall proceed” there shall be substituted the words “may proceed”, and
- (c) for the words “the tax charged and claimed” there shall be substituted the words “those sums”.

Marginal Citations

M31 1970 c. 9.

154 Recovery of tax from debtor in Scotland. U.K.

- (1) Section 63 of the ^{M32}Taxes Management Act 1970 (recovery of tax in Scotland) shall be amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (3), for the words “which relates to” onwards there shall be substituted the words “insofar as it relates to sums due in respect of—
 - (a) deductions of income tax which any person specified in the application was liable to make under section 203 of the principal Act (pay as you earn); or
 - (b) deductions required to be made under section 559 of the principal Act (sub-contractors in the construction industry) by any person specified in the application.”
- (3) The following subsection shall be added after that subsection—
 - “(4) In this section references to amounts of tax due and references to sums due in respect of deductions include references to amounts which are deemed to be—
 - (a) amounts of tax which the person is liable to pay by virtue of the Income Tax (Employments) Regulations 1973; or
 - (b) amounts which the person is liable to pay by virtue of the Income Tax (Sub-Contractors in the Construction Industry) Regulations 1975.”

Marginal Citations

M32 1970 c. 9.

155 Priority in cases of pouncing etc. by others in Scotland. U.K.

- (1) Section 64 of the Taxes Management Act 1970 (priority of claim for tax in Scotland) shall be amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (1)—
 - (a) for the words from the beginning to “shall be” there shall be substituted the words “If at any time at which any moveable goods and effects belonging to any person (in this section referred to as “the person in default”) are”,
 - (b) for the word “unless” there shall be substituted the words “the person in default is in arrears in respect of any such sums as are referred to in subsection (1A) below, the goods and effects may not be so taken unless on demand made by the collector”, and

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (c) for the words “the tax so in arrear” onwards there shall be substituted the words “such sums as have fallen due at or before the date of pointing or, as the case may be, other diligence or assignation.”
- (3) The following subsection shall be inserted after that subsection—
- “(1A) The sums referred to in subsection (1) above are—
- (a) sums due from the person in default on account of deductions of income tax from emoluments paid during the period of twelve months next before the date of pointing, being deductions which the person in default was liable to make under section 203 of the principal Act (pay as you earn) less the amount of the repayments of income tax which he was liable to make during that period; and
- (b) sums due from the person in default in respect of deductions required to be made by him for that period under section 559 of the principal Act (sub-contractors in the construction industry).”
- (4) In subsection (2)—
- (a) for the words from the beginning to “the tax claimed shall” there shall be substituted the words “If the sums referred to in subsection (1) above are not paid within ten days of the date of the demand referred to in that subsection, the sums shall”, and
- (b) for the words “proceeding at his instance” there shall be substituted the word “proceedings”.

Interest etc.

156 Interest on overdue tax. U.K.

- (1) In section 86 of the ^{M33}Taxes Management Act 1970, for subsection (3) and the words in subsection (4) preceding the Table there shall be substituted—
- “(3) For the purposes of this section—
- (a) the reckonable date in relation to any tax charged by an assessment to income tax under Schedule E, and
- (b) subject to subsection (3A) below, the reckonable date in relation to tax charged by any other assessment to which this section applies,
- is the date on which the tax becomes due and payable.
- (3A) Where an appeal has been made against an assessment and any of the tax charged by the assessment is due and payable on a date later than the date given by the Table in subsection (4) below, the reckonable date in relation to the tax so due and payable is the later of—
- (a) the date given by that Table, and
- (b) the date on which the tax would have been due and payable if there had been no appeal against the assessment (assuming in a case where the tax would not have been charged by the assessment if there had been no appeal that it was so charged).
- (4) The Table referred to in subsection (3A) above is as follows—”.
- (2) In section 55 of that Act—

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) in subsection (2), for the words “it were” onwards there shall be substituted the words “there had been no appeal.”,
 - (b) in subsection (6), for paragraphs (a) and (b) there shall be substituted—
 - “(a) in the case of a determination made on an application under subsection (3) above, other than an application made by virtue of subsection (3A) above, the date on which any tax the payment of which is not so postponed is due and payable shall be determined as if the tax were charged by an assessment notice of which was issued on the date of that determination and against which there had been no appeal; and
 - (b) in the case of a determination made on an application under subsection (4) above—
 - (i) the date on which any tax the payment of which ceases to be so postponed is due and payable shall be determined as if the tax were charged by an assessment notice of which was issued on the date of that determination and against which there had been no appeal; and
 - (ii) any tax overpaid shall be repaid.” and
 - (c) for subsection (9) there shall be substituted—
 - “(9) On the determination of the appeal—
 - (a) the date on which any tax payable in accordance with that determination is due and payable shall, so far as it is tax the payment of which had been postponed, or which would not have been charged by the assessment if there had been no appeal, be determined as if the tax were charged by an assessment—
 - (i) notice of which was issued on the date on which the inspector issues to the appellant a notice of the total amount payable in accordance with the determination, and
 - (ii) against which there had been no appeal; and
 - (b) any tax overpaid shall be repaid.”
- (3) In section 56(9) of that Act, for the words “amount of” there shall be substituted the words “amount charged by”.
- (4) This section shall apply to tax charged by any assessment notice of which is issued after 30th July 1982.

Marginal Citations

M33 1970 c. 9.

157 Effect of certain claims on interest. **U.K.**

- (1) In relation to any tax charged by an assessment made under section 252(1) of the Taxes Act 1988 to recover corporation tax that becomes payable as a result of the making of a claim under section 240 of that Act, the reckonable date for the purposes of section 86

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

of the ^{M34}Taxes Management Act 1970 (in this section referred to as “section 86”) is the date which is given by paragraph 5 of the Table in subsection (4) of that section.

- (2) Subsections (3) and (4) below apply in any case where—
- (a) there is in any accounting period of a company (in this section referred to as “the later period”) an amount of surplus advance corporation tax, as defined in subsection (3) of section 239 of the Taxes Act 1988, and
 - (b) pursuant to a claim under the said subsection (3), the whole or any part of that amount is treated for the purposes of the said section 239 as discharging liability for an amount of corporation tax for an earlier accounting period (in this section referred to as “the earlier period”), and
 - (c) if the claim under the said subsection (3) had not been made—
 - (i) an amount of corporation tax assessed for the earlier period would carry interest in accordance with section 86, or
 - (ii) an assessment could have been made under section 252(1) of that Act to recover corporation tax for the earlier period.
- (3) In determining the amount of interest payable under section 86 on corporation tax unpaid for the earlier period, no account shall be taken of any reduction in the amount of that tax which results from section 239(3) of the Taxes Act 1988 except so far as concerns interest for any time after the day following the expiry of nine months from the end of the later period.
- (4) Where, but for the claim under section 239(3) of the Taxes Act 1988, an assessment could have been made under section 252(1) of that Act to recover corporation tax for the earlier period, interest under section 86 shall be chargeable, in relation to any time not later than the day referred to in subsection (3) above, as if the claim had not been made and such an assessment had been made.
- (5) In relation to interest charged under section 86 by virtue of subsection (4) above, section 69 of the ^{M35}Taxes Management Act 1970 shall have effect with the substitution for the words following paragraph (c) of the words “as if it were tax charged and due and payable under an assessment”.
- (6) In this section—
- (a) subsection (1) above shall have effect where the claim under 240 of the Taxes Act 1988 is made on or after 14th March 1989, and
 - (b) subsections (2) to (5) above shall have effect where the claim under section 239(3) of that Act is made on or after that date,
- but this section shall not have effect in relation to corporation tax for any accounting period ending after the day which is the appointed day for the purposes of section 85 of the ^{M36}Finance (No.2) Act 1987.

Marginal Citations

M34 1970 c. 9.

M35 1970 c. 9.

M36 1987 c. 51.

158 Small amounts of interest. **U.K.**

- (1) In the Taxes Management Act 1970—

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) section 86(6) (remission of interest payable on overdue income tax, capital gains tax or corporation tax where interest would not exceed £30), and
 - (b) section 87(4) (no interest payable on overdue advance corporation tax or income tax on company payments where interest would not exceed £30), shall cease to have effect.
- (2) The words “of not less than £25” in—
- (a) [F192] section 283(1) of the M37 Taxation of Chargeable Gains Act 1992 (no repayment supplement where overdue repayment of capital gains tax less than £25), and
 - (b) section 824(1)(a) and (b) and (5) of the Taxes Act 1988 (no repayment supplement where overdue repayment of income tax etc. less than £25),
- and the words “of not less than £100” in section 825(2) of the Taxes Act 1988 (no repayment supplement where overdue repayment of company tax less than £100) shall cease to have effect.
- (3) Paragraph (a) of subsection (1) above shall have effect—
- (a) in relation to income tax under Schedule E, where the demand for the tax is made on or after the appointed day, and
 - (b) in any other case, where the tax is charged by an assessment notice of which is issued on or after the appointed day.
- (4) Paragraph (b) of that subsection shall have effect where the tax is charged by an assessment relating to an accounting period beginning on or after the appointed day.
- (5) Subsection (2) above shall have effect in relation to repayments of tax made on or after the appointed day.
- (6) In this section “the appointed day” means such day as the Treasury may by order made by statutory instrument appoint; and different days may be appointed for different enactments or for different purposes of the same enactment.

Textual Amendments

F192 Words in s. 158(2)(a) substituted (6.3.1992 with effect as mentioned in s. 289(1)(2) of the substituting Act) by Taxation of Chargeable Gains Act 1992 (c. 12), ss. 289, 290, Sch. 10 para. 19(3) (with ss. 60, 101(1), 201(3))

Marginal Citations

M37 1975 c. 45.

[F193] 159 Interest on tax in case of failure or error. U.K.

- (1) Section 88 of the M38 Taxes Management Act 1970 (interest on tax recovered to make good loss due to taxpayer’s fault) shall be amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (1), for the words “the fraud, wilful default or neglect of any person” there shall be substituted the words—
 - “(a) a failure to give a notice, make a return or produce or furnish a document or other information required by or under the Taxes Acts, or

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (b) an error in any information, return, accounts or other document delivered to an inspector or other officer of the Board.”.
- (3) The following subsection shall be added at the end—
- “(7) In paragraph (a) of subsection (1) above the reference to a failure to do something includes, in relation to anything required to be done at a particular time or within a particular period, a reference to a failure to do it at that time or within that period; and, accordingly, section 118(2) of this Act shall not apply for the purposes of that paragraph.”
- (4) This section shall have effect in relation to failures occurring, and errors in any information or documents delivered, on or after the day on which this Act is passed.]

Textual Amendments

F193 S. 159 repealed (29.4.1996 with effect as specified in Sch. 18 para. 17 of the amending Act) by 1996 c. 8, s. 205, Sch. 41 Pt. V(8), note

Marginal Citations

M38 1970 c. 9.

160 Determinations under TMA s. 88. U.K.

[^{F194}(1) In subsection (1) of section 88 of the Taxes Management Act 1970, for the words “shall carry” there shall be substituted the words “shall, if an inspector or the Board so determine, carry”.]

[^{F194}(2) The following section shall be inserted after that section—

“ Determinations under section 88.

- (1) Notice of a determination under section 88 above shall be served on the person liable to pay the interest to which it relates and shall specify—
- (a) the date on which it is issued,
 - (b) the amount of the tax which carries interest and the assessment by which that tax was charged,
 - (c) the date when for the purposes of section 88 above that tax ought to have been paid, and
 - (d) the time within which an appeal against the determination may be made.
- (2) After the notice of a determination under section 88 above has been served the determination shall not be altered except in accordance with this section.
- (3) A determination under section 88 above may be made at any time—
- (a) within six years after the end of the chargeable period for which the tax carrying the interest is charged (or, in the case of development land tax, of the financial year in which the liability for that tax arose), or
 - (b) within three years after the date of the final determination of the amount of that tax.

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (4) An appeal may be brought against a determination under section 88 above and, subject to the following provisions of this section, the provisions of this Act relating to appeals shall have effect in relation to an appeal against such a determination as they have effect in relation to an appeal against an assessment to tax.
- (5) On an appeal against a determination under section 88 above section 50(6) to (8) of this Act shall not apply but the Commissioners may—
- (a) if it appears to them that the tax carries no interest under that section, set the determination aside,
 - (b) if the determination appears to them to be correct, confirm the determination, or
 - (c) if the determination appears to them to be incorrect as to the amount of tax or the date on which the tax ought to have been paid, revise the determination accordingly.”]

(3) In section 70 (certificates) of the ^{M39}Taxes Management Act 1970, for subsection (3) there shall be substituted—

“(3) A certificate of the inspector or any other officer of the Board that it has been determined that tax carries interest under section 88 of this Act, together with a certificate of the collector that payment of the interest has not been made to him, or, to the best of his knowledge and belief, to any other collector, or to any person acting on his behalf or on behalf of another collector, shall be sufficient evidence—

 - (a) that interest is chargeable on the tax from the date when for the purposes of section 88 of this Act the tax ought to have been paid, and
 - (b) that the sum mentioned in the certificate is unpaid and is due to the Crown;

and any document purporting to be such a certificate as is mentioned in this subsection shall be deemed to be such a certificate unless the contrary is proved.”

[^{F194}(4) In section 113 of that Act (form of documents), the following subsection shall be inserted after subsection (1B)—

“(1C) Where an officer of the Board has decided that an amount of tax carries interest under section 88 of this Act and has taken the decisions needed for arriving at the date when for the purposes of that section that tax ought to have been paid, he may entrust to any other officer of the Board responsibility for completing the determination procedure, whether by means involving the use of a computer or otherwise, including responsibility for serving notice of the determination on the person liable to the interest.”]

(5) In section 114 of that Act (want of form not to invalidate), after the word “assessment”, in each place where it occurs, there shall be inserted the words “or determination”.

[^{F195}(6) In paragraph 5 of Schedule 3 to that Act (rules for assigning proceedings to Commissioners), the following entry shall be inserted in the first column after the entry relating to an appeal against an assessment to capital gain tax— “ An appeal against a determination under section 88 of this Act. ”]

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

Textual Amendments

- F194** S. 160(1)(2)(4) repealed (29.4.1996 with effect as specified in Sch. 18 para. 17 of the amending Act) by 1996 c. 8, s. 205, Sch. 41 Pt. V(8), note
- F195** S. 160(6) repealed (29.4.1996 with effect as mentioned in Sch. 22 para. 12 of the amending Act) by 1996 c. 8, s. 205, Sch. 41 Pt. V(12), note

Marginal Citations

- M39** 1970 c. 9.

[^{F196}161 Tax carrying interest under TMA ss. 86 and 88. U.K.]

The following subsection shall be substituted for section 88(3) of the ^{M40}Taxes Management Act 1970—

“(3) Where it is finally determined that any tax carries interest under this section, the tax shall carry no interest under section 86 or 86A above (and, accordingly, any interest under either of those sections which has been paid before the final determination shall be set off against the amount of the interest under this section); and for the purposes of this subsection a determination that tax carries interest is not final until it can no longer be varied, whether by any Commissioners on appeal or by the order of any court.”]

Textual Amendments

- F196** S. 161 repealed (29.4.1996 with effect as specified in Sch. 18 para. 17 of the amending Act) by 1996 c. 8, s. 205, Sch. 41 Pt. V(8), note

Marginal Citations

- M40** 1970 c. 9.

Penalties

162 Failure to make return. U.K.

- (1) Section 93 of the Taxes Management Act 1970 (failure to comply with notice to make return for income tax or capital gains tax) shall be amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (1) (initial and daily penalties), for paragraphs (a) and (b) there shall be substituted—
 - “(a) to a penalty not exceeding £300, and
 - (b) if the failure continues after a penalty is imposed under paragraph (a) above, to a further penalty or penalties not exceeding £60 for each day on which the failure continues after the day on which the penalty under paragraph (a) above was imposed (but excluding any day for which a penalty under this paragraph has already been imposed).”
- (3) The following subsection shall be substituted for subsection (2)—

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- “(2) If a failure by a person to comply with a notice such as is referred to in subsection (1) above continues after the end of the year of assessment following that during which it was served then, without prejudice to any penalty under subsection (1) above, he shall be liable to a penalty of an amount not exceeding so much of the tax with which he is charged (whether for one or for more than one year of assessment) in assessments—
- (a) based wholly or partly on any income or chargeable gains that ought to have been included in the return required by the notice, and
 - (b) made after the end of the year next following the year of assessment in which the notice was served,
- as is attributable to the income or chargeable gains that ought to have been so included.”
- (4) The following subsection shall be substituted for subsection (5)—
- “(5) No penalty shall be imposed under subsection (1) above in respect of a failure at any time after the failure has been remedied.”
- (5) The following subsection shall be substituted for subsection (7)—
- “(7) If the person on whom a notice is served proves that there was no income or chargeable gain to be included in the return, the penalty under this subsection shall not exceed £100.”
- (6) This section shall apply in relation to any failure to comply with a notice served on or after 6th April 1989.

163 Incorrect return, accounts etc. **U.K.**

- (1) In—
- (a) section 95(1) of the ^{M41}Taxes Management Act 1970 (incorrect return etc. for income tax or capital gains tax), and
 - (b) section 96(1) of that Act (incorrect return etc. for corporation tax),
- for the words “the aggregate” onwards there shall be substituted the words “the amount of the difference specified in subsection (2) below.”
- (2) This section shall apply in relation to returns, statements, declarations or accounts delivered, made or submitted on or after the day on which this Act is passed.

Marginal Citations

M41 1970 c. 9.

164 Special returns, information etc. **U.K.**

- (1) Section 98 of the Taxes Management Act 1970 (special returns, information etc.) shall be amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (1) (initial and daily penalties)—
- (a) for the word “Where” there shall be substituted the words “Subject to section 98A below, where”, and

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (b) for the words “subsection (3)” onwards there shall be substituted the words “subsections (3) and (4) below—
- (i) to a penalty not exceeding £300, and
 - (ii) if the failure continues after a penalty is imposed under paragraph (i) above, to a further penalty or penalties not exceeding £60 for each day on which the failure continues after the day on which the penalty under paragraph (i) above was imposed (but excluding any day for which a penalty under this paragraph has already been imposed).”
- (3) In subsection (2) (maximum penalty for information given fraudulently or negligently) —
- (a) for the word “Where” there shall be substituted the words “Subject to section 98A below, where”, and
 - (b) for the words “ £250, or, in the case of fraud, £500” there shall be substituted “ £3,000”.
- (4) The following subsections shall be substituted for subsection (3)—
- “(3) No penalty shall be imposed under subsection (1) above in respect of a failure within paragraph (a) of that subsection at any time after the failure has been remedied.
 - (4) No penalty shall be imposed under paragraph (ii) of subsection (1) above in respect of a failure within paragraph (b) of that subsection at any time after the failure has been remedied.”
- (5) In the Table—
- (a) in the first column, in the entry relating to Part III of the ^{M42}Taxes Management Act 1970, the words “, except sections 16 and 24(2)” shall be omitted;
 - (b) the entries relating to sections 38(5) and 42 of the Taxes Act 1988 shall be moved from the second column to the appropriate place in the first column; and
 - (c) the entry relating to section 481(5)(k) of that Act shall be omitted from the first column and an entry relating to section 482(2) of that Act shall be inserted at the appropriate place in the second column.
- (6) In consequence of the amendment made by subsection (5)(a) above section 16(6) of the Taxes Management Act 1970 shall cease to have effect.
- (7) This section shall apply in relation to—
- (a) any failure to comply with a notice or to furnish information, give a certificate or produce a document or record beginning on or after the day on which this Act is passed, and
 - (b) the furnishing, giving, producing or making of any incorrect information, certificate, document, record or declaration on or after that day.

Marginal Citations

M42 1970 c.9.

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

165 Special penalties in the case of certain returns. **U.K.**

- (1) The following section shall be inserted after section 98 of the Taxes Management Act 1970—

“98A Special penalties in the case of certain returns.

- (1) Regulations under section 203(2) (PAYE) or 566(1) (sub-contractors) of the principal Act may provide that this section shall apply in relation to any specified provision of the regulations.
- (2) Where this section applies in relation to a provision of regulations, any person who fails to make a return in accordance with the provision shall be liable—
- (a) to a penalty or penalties of the relevant monthly amount for each month (or part of a month) during which the failure continues, but excluding any month after the twelfth or for which a penalty under this paragraph has already been imposed, and
 - (b) if the failure continues beyond twelve months, without prejudice to any penalty under paragraph (a) above, to a penalty not exceeding so much of the amount payable by him in accordance with the regulations for the year of assessment to which the return relates as remained unpaid at the end of 19th April after the end of that year.
- (3) For the purposes of subsection (2)(a) above, the relevant monthly amount in the case of a failure to make a return—
- (a) where the number of persons in respect of whom particulars should be included in the return is fifty or less, is £100, and
 - (b) where that number is greater than fifty, is £100 for each fifty such persons and an additional £100 where that number is not a multiple of fifty.
- (4) Where this section applies in relation to a provision of regulations, any person who fraudulently or negligently makes an incorrect return of a kind mentioned in the provision shall be liable to a penalty not exceeding the difference between—
- (a) the amount payable by him in accordance with the regulations for the year of assessment to which the return relates, and
 - (b) the amount which would have been so payable if the return had been correct.”

- [^{F197}(2) In relation to a failure to make a return beginning before such day as the Treasury may by order made by statutory instrument appoint, section 98A(2) shall have effect with the substitution of the following paragraph for paragraph (a)—

- “(a) to—
- (i) a penalty not exceeding twelve times the relevant monthly amount, and
 - (ii) if the failure continues after a penalty is imposed under sub-paragraph (i) above, a further penalty or penalties of the relevant monthly amount for each month (or part of a month) during which the failure continues, but excluding any month after the twelfth or for which a penalty under this sub-paragraph has already been imposed.”.]

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

Textual Amendments

F197 S. 165(2) repealed (with effect in relation to failures beginning on or after 20.5.1995) by [Finance Act 1989 \(c. 26, SIF 63:1\)](#), ss. 165(2), 187(1), [Sch. 17 Pt. VIII](#) Note 7; [S.I. 1994/2508](#), [art. 2](#)

166 Assisting in preparation of incorrect return etc. **U.K.**

- (1) The following section shall be substituted for section 99 of the ^{M43}Taxes Management Act 1970—

“99 Assisting in preparation of incorrect return etc.

Any person who assists in or induces the preparation or delivery of any information, return, accounts or other document which—

- (a) he knows will be, or is or are likely to be, used for any purpose of tax, and
- (b) he knows to be incorrect,

shall be liable to a penalty not exceeding £3,000.”

- (2) This section shall apply in relation to assistance and inducements occurring on or after the day on which this Act is passed.

Marginal Citations

M43 1970c. 9.

167 Determination of penalties. **U.K.**

The following sections shall be substituted for section 100 of the ^{M44}Taxes Management Act 1970—

“100 Determination of penalties by officer of Board.

- (1) Subject to subsection (2) below and except where proceedings for a penalty have been instituted under section 100D below or a penalty has been imposed by the Commissioners under section 53 of this Act, an officer of the Board authorised by the Board for the purposes of this section may make a determination imposing a penalty under any provision of the Taxes Acts and setting it at such amount as, in his opinion, is correct or appropriate.

- (2) Subsection (1) above does not apply where the penalty is a penalty under—
- (a) section 93(1) above as it has effect before the amendments made by section 162 of the Finance Act 1989 or section 93(1)(a) above as it has effect after those amendments,
 - (b) section 94(1) above as it has effect before the substitution made by section 83 of the Finance (No.2) Act 1987,
 - (c) section 98(1) above as it has effect before the amendments made by section 164 of the Finance Act 1989 or section 98(1)(i) above as it has effect after those amendments, or

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (d) paragraph (a)(i) of section 98A(2) above as it has effect by virtue of section 165(2) of the Finance Act 1989.
- (3) Notice of a determination of a penalty under this section shall be served on the person liable to the penalty and shall state the date on which it is issued and the time within which an appeal against the determination may be made.
- (4) After the notice of a determination under this section has been served the determination shall not be altered except in accordance with this section or on appeal.
- (5) If it is discovered by an officer of the Board authorised by the Board for the purposes of this section that the amount of a penalty determined under this section is or has become insufficient the officer may make a determination in a further amount so that the penalty is set at the amount which, in his opinion, is correct or appropriate.
- (6) In any case where—
- (a) a determination under this section is of a penalty under section 94(6) above, and
 - (b) after the determination has been made it is discovered by an officer of the Board authorised by the Board for the purposes of this section that the amount which was taken into account as the relevant amount of tax is or has become excessive,
- the determination shall be revised so that the penalty is set at the amount which is correct; and, where more than the correct amount has already been paid, the appropriate amount shall be repaid.

100A Provisions supplementary to section 100.

- (1) Where a person who has incurred a penalty has died, a determination under section 100 above which could have been made in relation to him may be made in relation to his personal representatives, and any penalty imposed on personal representatives by virtue of this subsection shall be a debt due from and payable out of his estate.
- (2) A penalty determined under section 100 above shall be due and payable at the end of the period of thirty days beginning with the date of the issue of the notice of determination.
- (3) A penalty determined under section 100 above shall for all purposes be treated as if it were tax charged in an assessment and due and payable.

100B Appeals against penalty determinations.

- (1) An appeal may be brought against the determination of a penalty under section 100 above and, subject to the following provisions of this section, the provisions of this Act relating to appeals shall have effect in relation to an appeal against such a determination as they have effect in relation to an appeal against an assessment to tax.
- (2) On an appeal against the determination of a penalty under section 100 above section 50(6) to (8) of this Act shall not apply but—

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) in the case of a penalty which is required to be of a particular amount, the Commissioners may—
 - (i) if it appears to them that no penalty has been incurred, set the determination aside,
 - (ii) if the amount determined appears to them to be correct, confirm the determination, or
 - (iii) if the amount determined appears to them to be incorrect, increase or reduce it to the correct amount,
 - (b) in the case of any other penalty, the Commissioners may—
 - (i) if it appears to them that no penalty has been incurred, set the determination aside,
 - (ii) if the amount determined appears to them to be appropriate, confirm the determination,
 - (iii) if the amount determined appears to them to be excessive, reduce it to such other amount (including nil) as they consider appropriate, or
 - (iv) if the amount determined appears to them to be insufficient, increase it to such amount not exceeding the permitted maximum as they consider appropriate.
- (3) Without prejudice to section 56 of this Act, an appeal from a decision of the Commissioners against the amount of a penalty which has been determined under section 100 above or this section shall lie, at the instance of the person liable to the penalty, to the High Court or, in Scotland, to the Court of Session as the Court of Exchequer in Scotland; and on that appeal the court shall have the like jurisdiction as is conferred on the Commissioners by virtue of this section.

100C Penalty proceedings before Commissioners.

- (1) An officer of the Board authorised by the Board for the purposes of this section may commence proceedings before the General or Special Commissioners for any penalty to which subsection (1) of section 100 above does not apply by virtue of subsection (2) of that section.
- (2) Proceedings under this section shall be by way of information in writing, made to the Commissioners, and upon summons issued by them to the defendant (or defender) to appear before them at a time and place stated in the summons; and they shall hear and decide each case in a summary way.
- (3) Any penalty determined by the Commissioners in proceedings under this section shall for all purposes be treated as if it were tax charged in an assessment and due and payable.
- (4) An appeal against the determination of a penalty in proceedings under this section shall lie to the High Court or, in Scotland, the Court of Session as the Court of Exchequer in Scotland—
 - (a) by any party on a question of law, and
 - (b) by the defendant (or, in Scotland, the defender) against the amount of the penalty.
- (5) On any such appeal the court may—

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) if it appears that no penalty has been incurred, set the determination aside,
- (b) if the amount determined appears to be appropriate, confirm the determination,
- (c) if the amount determined appears to be excessive, reduce it to such other amount (including nil) as the court considers appropriate, or
- (d) if the amount determined appears to be insufficient, increase it to such amount not exceeding the permitted maximum as the court considers appropriate.

100D Penalty proceedings before court.

- (1) Where in the opinion of the Board the liability of any person for a penalty arises by reason of the fraud of that or any other person, proceedings for the penalty may be instituted before the High Court or, in Scotland, the Court of Session as the Court of Exchequer in Scotland.
- (2) Proceedings under this section which are not instituted (in England, Wales or Northern Ireland) under the Crown Proceedings Act 1947 by and in the name of the Board as an authorised department for the purposes of that Act shall be instituted—
 - (a) in England and Wales, in the name of the Attorney General,
 - (b) in Scotland, in the name of the Lord Advocate, and
 - (c) in Northern Ireland, in the name of the Attorney General for Northern Ireland.
- (3) Any proceedings under this section instituted in England and Wales shall be deemed to be civil proceedings by the Crown within the meaning of Part II of the Crown Proceedings Act 1947 and any such proceedings instituted in Northern Ireland shall be deemed to be civil proceedings within the meaning of that Part of that Act as for the time being in force in Northern Ireland.
- (4) If in proceedings under this section the court does not find that fraud is proved but considers that the person concerned is nevertheless liable to a penalty, the court may determine a penalty notwithstanding that, but for the opinion of the Board as to fraud, the penalty would not have been a matter for the court.”

Marginal Citations

M44 1970 c. 9.

168 Amendments consequential on section 167. U.K.

- (1) In consequence of the amendment made by section 167 above the ^{M45}Taxes Management Act 1970 shall be amended in accordance with subsections (2) to (8) below.
- (2) In section 20A (power to call for papers of tax accountant)—
 - (a) in subsection (1), for the words “awarded against him a penalty incurred by” there shall be substituted the words “a penalty imposed on”,

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (b) in subsection (2), for the word “award” in the first place where it occurs there shall be substituted the word “penalty” and for that word in the second place where it occurs there shall be substituted the word “imposition”, and
- (c) in subsection (4), for the words “award against” there shall be substituted the words “imposition on” and for the word “award” there shall be substituted the word “penalty”.
- ^{F198}(3)
- (4) In section 102 (mitigation of penalties), for the words “recovery thereof” there shall be substituted the words “a penalty”.
- (5) In section 105 (evidence)—
- (a) the following paragraph shall be substituted for paragraph (a) of subsection (1)
-
- “(a) pecuniary settlements may be accepted instead of a penalty being determined, or proceedings being instituted, in relation to any tax,”
- (b) in paragraph (b) of subsection (2), for the words “sum” onwards there shall be substituted the words “tax due from him”, and
- (c) after that paragraph there shall be inserted the words “and
- (c) any proceedings for a penalty or on appeal against the determination of a penalty.”
- (6) In section 112 (loss of documents etc.), the following subsection shall be added at the end—
- “(3) The references in subsection (1) above to assessments to tax include references to determinations of penalties; and in its application to such determinations the proviso to that subsection shall have effect with the appropriate modifications.”
- (7) In section 113 (form of documents)—
- (a) the following subsection shall be inserted after subsection (1C)—
- “(1D) Where an officer of the Board has decided to impose a penalty under section 100 of this Act and has taken all other decisions needed for arriving at the amount of the penalty, he may entrust to any other officer of the Board responsibility for completing the determination procedure, whether by means involving the use of a computer or otherwise, including responsibility for serving notice of the determination on the person liable to the penalty.” and
- (b) in subsection (3)—
- (i) after the words “Every assessment,” there shall be inserted the words “determination of a penalty,”
- (ii) after the words “notice of assessment” there shall be inserted the words “, of determination”, and
- (iii) after the words “levying tax” there shall be inserted the words “or determining a penalty”.
- [^{F199}(8) In paragraph 5 of Schedule 3 (rules for assigning proceedings to Commissioners), for the words “section 100(4)” there shall be substituted the words “section 100C or an appeal under section 100B against the determination of a penalty”.]

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

(9) In section 41 of the ^{M46}Development Land Tax Act 1976 (administration of development land tax) the following subsection shall be inserted after subsection (1)—

“(1A) Nothing in sections 167 to 169 of the Finance Act 1989 shall apply to penalties relating to development land tax.”

Textual Amendments

F198 S. 168(3) repealed (1.9.1994) by S.I. 1994/1813, reg. 2(2), Sch. 2 Pt. I

F199 S. 168(8) repealed (29.4.1996 with effect as mentioned in Sch. 22 para. 12 of the amending Act) by 1996 c. 8, s. 205, Sch. 41 Pt. V(12), note

Marginal Citations

M45 1970 c.9.

M46 1976 c. 24.

169 Time limits. **U.K.**

(1) The following section shall be substituted for section 103 of the ^{M47}Taxes Management Act 1970—

“103 Time limits for penalties.

- (1) Subject to subsection (2) below, where the amount of a penalty is to be ascertained by reference to tax payable by a person for any period, the penalty may be determined by an officer of the Board, or proceedings for the penalty may be commenced before the Commissioners or a court—
 - (a) at any time within six years after the date on which the penalty was incurred, or
 - (b) at any later time within three years after the final determination of the amount of tax by reference to which the amount of the penalty is to be ascertained.
- (2) Where the tax was payable by a person who has died, and the determination would be made in relation to his personal representatives, subsection (1)(b) above does not apply if the tax was charged in an assessment made later than six years after the end of the chargeable period for which it was charged.
- (3) A penalty under section 99 of this Act may be determined by an officer of the Board, or proceedings for such a penalty may be commenced before a court, at any time within twenty years after the date on which the penalty was incurred.
- (4) A penalty to which neither subsection (1) nor subsection (3) above applies may be so determined, or proceedings for such a penalty may be commenced before the Commissioners or a court, at any time within six years after the date on which the penalty was incurred or began to be incurred.”

(2) The amendment made by subsection (1) above shall not affect the application of section 103(4) of the ^{M48}Taxes Management Act 1970 to proceedings under section 100 of that Act as it has effect before the amendment made by section 167 above.

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

Marginal Citations

M47 1970c. 9.

M48 1970 c. 9.

170 Up-rating of certain penalties. **U.K.**

[^{F200}(1) In section 23(8) of the Taxes Act 1988 (maximum penalty for agents failing to make certain payments on behalf of principals), for “£50” there shall be substituted “£300”.]

^{F201}(2)

(3) In section 306(6) of that Act (maximum penalty for false certificates or statements relating to investment in corporate trades), for the words “£250 or, in the case of fraud, £500” there shall be substituted “£3,000”.

(4) In—

(a) section 619(7) of that Act (maximum penalty for false statements or representations relating to relief for qualifying premiums),

(b) section 653 of that Act (maximum penalty for statements or representations about personal pension schemes), and

(c) section 658(5) of that Act (maximum penalty for false statements or representations relating to purchased life annuities),

for “£500” there shall be substituted “£3,000”.

(5) In paragraph 2(4) of Schedule 19A to that Act and Schedule 16A to the ^{M49}Finance Act 1973 (maximum penalty for incorrect return by Lloyd’s agent), for the words “£500 in the case of fraud and £250 in the case of negligence” there shall be substituted “£3,000”.

(6) This section shall apply in relation to things done or omitted on or after the day on which this Act is passed.

Textual Amendments

F200 S. 170(1) repealed (1.5.1995 with effect as mentioned in s. 39(4)(5) of the amending Act) by 1995 c. 4, s. 162, **Sch. 29 Pt. VIII(1)**, note

F201 S. 170(2) repealed (16.7.1992 with effect in accordance with s. 32 of the repealing Act) by **Finance (No. 2) Act 1992 (c. 48)**, ss. 32, 82, **Sch. 18 Pt. VII(4)**

Marginal Citations

M49 1973 c. 51.

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

PART III U.K.

MISCELLANEOUS AND GENERAL

Inheritance tax

171 Gifts to housing associations. U.K.

- (1) The following section shall be inserted in the ^{M50}Inheritance Tax Act 1984 after section 24—

“24A Gifts to housing associations.

- (1) A transfer of value is exempt to the extent that the value transferred by it is attributable to land in the United Kingdom given to a registered housing association.
- (2) In subsection (1) above “registered housing association” means a registered housing association within the meaning of the Housing Associations Act 1985 or Part VII of the Housing (Northern Ireland) Order 1981.
- (3) Subsections (2) to (5) of section 23 and subsection (4) of section 24 above shall apply in relation to subsection (1) above as they apply in relation to section 24(1).”
- (2) In section 23(5) of the Inheritance Tax Act 1984 the words “or, where it is land, of a body mentioned in section 24A below” shall be added at the end.
- (3) In section 29(5) of that Act—
- (a) the words “or, where it is land, of a body mentioned in section 24A” shall be inserted at the end of paragraph (b), and
- (b) after “24(3) and (4),” there shall be inserted “24A(3).”
- (4) In section 161(2)(b)(ii) of that Act after “24,” there shall be inserted “24A.”
- (5) In section 102(5) of the ^{M51}Finance Act 1986 after paragraph (e) there shall be inserted—
- “(e) section 24A (gifts to housing associations);”.
- (6) This section shall apply to transfers of value made on or after 14th March 1989.

Marginal Citations

M50 1984 c. 51.

M51 1986 c. 41.

172 Abatement of exemption where claim settled out of beneficiary’s own resources. U.K.

- (1) The following section shall be inserted after section 29 of the ^{M52}Inheritance Tax Act 1984—

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

“29A Abatement of exemption where claim settled out of beneficiary’s own resources.

- (1) This section applies where—
 - (a) apart from this section the transfer of value made on the death of any person is an exempt transfer to the extent that the value transferred by it is attributable to an exempt gift, and
 - (b) the exempt beneficiary, in settlement of the whole or part of any claim against the deceased’s estate, effects a disposition of property not derived from the transfer.
- (2) The provisions of this Act shall have effect in relation to the transfer as if—
 - (a) so much of the relevant value as is equal to the following amount, namely the amount by which the value of the exempt beneficiary’s estate immediately after the disposition is less than it would be but for the disposition, or
 - (b) where that amount exceeds the relevant value, the whole of the relevant value,

were attributable to such a gift to the exempt beneficiary as is mentioned in subsection (3) below (instead of being attributable to a gift with respect to which the transfer is exempt).
- (3) The gift referred to in subsection (2) above is a specific gift with respect to which the transfer is chargeable, being a gift which satisfies the conditions set out in paragraphs (a) and (b) of section 38(1) below.
- (4) In determining the value of the exempt beneficiary’s estate for the purposes of subsection (2) above—
 - (a) no deduction shall be made in respect of the claim referred to in subsection (1)(b) above, and
 - (b) where the disposition referred to in that provision constitutes a transfer of value—
 - (i) no account shall be taken of any liability of the beneficiary for any tax on the value transferred, and
 - (ii) sections 104 and 116 below shall be disregarded.
- (5) Subsection (1)(b) above does not apply in relation to any claim against the deceased’s estate in respect of so much of any liability as is, in accordance with this Act, to be taken into account in determining the value of the estate.
- (6) In this section—

“exempt gift”, in relation to a transfer of value falling within subsection (1)(a) above, means—

 - (a) a gift with respect to which the transfer is (apart from this section) exempt by virtue of the provisions of any of sections 18 and 23 to 28 above, or
 - (b) where (apart from this section) the transfer is so exempt with respect to a gift up to a limit, so much of the gift as is within that limit;

“the exempt beneficiary”, in relation to an exempt gift, means any of the following, namely—

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) where the gift is exempt by virtue of section 18 above, the deceased's spouse,
 - (b) where the gift is exempt by virtue of section 23 above, any person or body—
 - (i) whose property the property falling within subsection (1) of that section becomes, or
 - (ii) by whom that property is held on trust for charitable purposes,
 - (c) where the gift is exempt by virtue of section 24, 25 or 26 above, any body whose property the property falling within subsection (1) of that section becomes,
 - (d) where the gift is exempt by virtue of section 24A above, any body to whom the land falling within subsection (1) of that section is given, and
 - (e) where the gift is exempt by virtue of section 27 or 28 above, the trustees of any settlement in which the property falling within subsection (1) of that section becomes comprised;
“gift” and “specific gift” have the same meaning as in Chapter III of this Part; and
“the relevant value”, in relation to a transfer of value falling within subsection (1)(a) above, means so much of the value transferred by the transfer as is attributable to the gift referred to in that provision.”
- (2) This section shall have effect in relation to deaths occurring on or after the day on which this Act is passed.

Marginal Citations

M52 1984c. 51.

Stamp duty etc.

[^{F202}**173 Insurance: abolition of certain duties. U.K.**

- (1) Stamp duty shall not be chargeable under—
 - (a) the heading “Policy of Life Insurance” in Schedule 1 to the ^{M53}Stamp Act 1891, or
 - (b) paragraph (3) of the heading “Bond, Covenant, or Instrument of any kind whatsoever” in that Schedule (superannuation annuities).
- (2) Subject to section 4 of the Stamp Act 1891 (separate charges on instruments containing or relating to several distinct matters) an instrument which, but for subsection (1) above, would be chargeable with stamp duty under paragraph (3) of the heading mentioned in paragraph (b) of that subsection shall not be chargeable with stamp duty under any other provision of the Stamp Act 1891.
- (3) Section 100 of the Stamp Act 1891 (penalty for not making out policy or making policy not duly stamped) shall cease to have effect.
- (4) Section 118 of the Stamp Act 1891 (assignment of life insurance policy to be stamped before payment of money assured) shall cease to have effect.

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (5) Section 47(3) of the ^{M54}Finance Act 1966 (enhanced duty where policy not exceeding 2 years is varied so as to exceed 2 years) and section 5(3) of the ^{M55}Finance Act (Northern Ireland) 1966 (equivalent provision for Northern Ireland) shall cease to have effect.
- (6) Subsections (1) and (2) above apply to instruments made after 31st December 1989.
- (7) So far as it relates to section 100(1) of the 1891 Act, subsection (3) above applies where a person receives, or takes credit for, a premium or consideration for insurance after 30th November 1989.
- (8) So far as it relates to section 100(2) of the 1891 Act, subsection (3) above applies where the policy is made after 31st December 1989.
- (9) Subsection (4) above applies to instruments of assignment made after 31st December 1989.
- (10) Subsection (5) above applies where the policy is varied after 31st December 1989 (whenever it was made).]

Textual Amendments

F202 S. 173 repealed (27.7.1999 with effect as mentioned in Sch. 20 Pt. V(2) of the amending Act) by 1999 c. 16, s. 138, Sch. 20 Pt. V(2), notes 1, 2

Marginal Citations

M53 1891 c. 39.

M54 1966 c. 18.

M55 1966 c. 21 (N.I.).

174 Unit trusts. **U.K.**

F203
.....

Textual Amendments

F203 S. 174 repealed (with effect as mentioned in Sch. 20 Pt. V(5) notes 1, 2 of the amending Act) by Finance Act 1999 (c. 16) s. 139, {Sch. 20 Pt. V(5)}

175 Stamp duty: stock exchange nominees **U.K.**

- (1) The Treasury may by regulations provide that where —
- circumstances would (apart from the regulations) give rise to a charge to stamp duty under [^{F204}Part I of Schedule 13 to the Finance Act 1999 (conveyance or transfer on sale)] and to a charge to stamp duty reserve tax,
 - the circumstances involve a stock exchange nominee, and
 - the circumstances are such as are prescribed,
- the charge to stamp duty shall be treated as not arising.
- (2) The power to make regulations under this section shall be exercisable by statutory instrument subject to annulment in pursuance of a resolution of the House of Commons.

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (3) In this section —
- (a) “prescribed” means prescribed by the regulations, and
 - (b) “stock exchange nominee” means a person designated for the purposes of section 127 of the Finance Act 1976 as a nominee of The Stock Exchange by an order made by the Secretary of State under subsection (5) of that section.

Textual Amendments

F204 Words in s. 175(1)(a) substituted (with effect in accordance with s. 112(6) of the amending Act) by Finance Act 1999 (c. 16) ss. 112(4), 122, {Sch. 14 para. 23}

176 Stamp duty reserve tax: stock exchange nominees **U.K.**

- (1) The Treasury may by regulations provide that where —
- (a) circumstances would (apart from the regulations) give rise to two charges to stamp duty reserve tax,
 - (b) the circumstances involve a stock exchange nominee, and
 - (c) the circumstances are such as are prescribed,
- such one of the charges as may be prescribed shall be treated as not arising.
- (2) The Treasury may by regulations provide that where —
- (a) circumstances would (apart from the regulations) give rise to a charge to stamp duty reserve tax and a charge to stamp duty,
 - (b) the circumstances involve a stock exchange nominee, and
 - (c) the circumstances are such as are prescribed,
- the charge to stamp duty reserve tax shall be treated as not arising.
- (3) The Treasury may by regulations provide that a provision of an Act by virtue of which there is no charge to stamp duty reserve tax shall also apply in circumstances which involve a stock exchange nominee and are such as are prescribed.
- (4) The Treasury may by regulations provide that a provision of an Act by virtue of which the rate at which stamp duty reserve tax is charged is less than it would be apart from the provision shall also apply in circumstances which involve a stock exchange nominee and are such as are prescribed.
- (5) The power to make regulations under this section shall be exercisable by statutory instrument subject to annulment in pursuance of a resolution of the House of Commons.
- (6) In this section —
- (a) “prescribed” means prescribed by the regulations, and
 - (b) “stock exchange nominee” means a person designated for the purposes of section 127 of the Finance Act 1976 as a nominee of The Stock Exchange by an order made by the Secretary of State under subsection (5) of that section.

177 Stamp duty reserve tax: information. **U.K.**

— Regulations under section 98(1) of the Finance Act 1986 (administration etc. of stamp duty reserve tax) may include —

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) provision that notice which the regulations require to be given to the Commissioners of Inland Revenue shall be given in a manner or form specified by the Commissioners;
- (b) provision that information which the regulations require to be supplied to the Commissioners shall be supplied in a manner or form specified by the Commissioners.

Interest etc.

178 Setting of rates of interest. **U.K.**

- (1) The rate of interest applicable for the purposes of an enactment to which this section applies shall be the rate which for the purposes of that enactment is provided for by regulations made by the Treasury under this section.
- (2) This section applies to—
 - [^{F205}(aa) section 15A of the Stamp Act 1891;]
 - (a) section 8(9) of the ^{M56}Finance Act 1894,
 - (b) section 18 of the ^{M57}Finance Act 1896,
 - (c) section 61(5) of the ^{M58}Finance (1909-10) Act 1910,
 - (d) section 17(3) of the ^{M59}Law of Property Act 1925,
 - (e) section 73(6) of the ^{M60}Land Registration Act 1925,
 - (f) [^{F206}sections 59C, 86, 86A, 87, 87A, [^{F207}88], 103A] of the ^{M61}TaxesManagement Act 1970,
 - (g) paragraph 3 of Schedule 16A to the ^{M62}Finance Act 1973,
 - [^{F208}(gg) [^{F209}paragraph 6 of Schedule 1 to the Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992],]
 - [^{F210}(gh) section 71(8A) of the ^{M63}Social Security Administration Act 1992, and section 69(8A) of the ^{M64}Social Security Administration (Northern Ireland) Act 1992, as they have effect in any case where the overpayment was made in respect of working families' tax credit or disabled person's tax credit;]
 - (h) paragraphs 15 and 16 of Schedule 2, and paragraph 8 of Schedule 5, to the ^{M65}Oil Taxation Act 1975,
 - [^{F211}(i) section 283 of the ^{M66}Taxation of Chargeable Gains Act 1992;]
 - (j) paragraph 59 of Schedule 8 to the ^{M67}Development Land Tax Act 1976,
 - (k) sections 233 and 236(3) and (4) of the ^{M68}Inheritance Tax Act 1984,
 - (l) section 92 of the Finance Act 1986, and
 - (m) sections ^{F212}... 160, 824, 825 and 826 of, [^{F213}and paragraph 6B of Schedule 3 to] and paragraph 3 of Schedule 19A to, the ^{M69}Taxes Act 1988. [^{F214}and]
 - [^{F215}(n)^{F216}and
 - [(o) section 14(4) of the Ports Act 1991.]
 - [^{F217}(p) paragraph 8 of Schedule 4 to the Tax Credits Act 1999. [^{F218}, and]
 - (p) section 110 of the Finance Act 1999.]
- (3) Regulations under this section may—
 - (a) make different provision for different enactments or for different purposes of the same enactment,

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (b) either themselves specify a rate of interest for the purposes of an enactment or make provision for any such rate to be determined by reference to such rate or the average of such rates as may be referred to in the regulations,
 - (c) provide for rates to be reduced below, or increased above, what they otherwise would be by specified amounts or by reference to specified formulae,
 - (d) provide for rates arrived at by reference to averages to be rounded up or down,
 - (e) provide for circumstances in which alteration of a rate of interest is or is not to take place, and
 - (f) provide that alterations of rates are to have effect for periods beginning on or after a day determined in accordance with the regulations in relation to interest running from before that day as well as from or from after that day.
- (4) The power to make regulations under this section shall be exercisable by statutory instrument which shall be subject to annulment in pursuance of a resolution of the House of Commons.
- (5) Where—
- (a) the rate provided for by regulations under this section as the rate applicable for the purposes of any enactment is changed, and
 - (b) the new rate is not specified in the regulations,
- the Board shall by order specify the new rate and the day from which it has effect.
- (6) In section 828(2) of the Taxes Act 1988 (powers to make orders which are not exercisable by statutory instrument) the words “or section 178(5) of the Finance Act 1989” shall be added at the end.
- (7) Subsection (1) shall have effect for periods beginning on or after such day as the Treasury may by order made by statutory instrument appoint and shall have effect in relation to interest running from before that day as well as from or from after that day; and different days may be appointed for different enactments.

Textual Amendments

- F205** S. 178(2)(aa) inserted (27.7.1999 with application to instruments executed on or after 1.10.1999) by 1999 c. 16, **ss. 109(2)(4)**, 123(4)
- F206** Words in s. 178(2)(f) substituted (1.9.1994 with effect as mentioned in s. 199 of the amending Act) by 1994 c. 9, s. 196, **Sch. 19 Pt. III para. 44**; S.I. 1998/3173, **art. 2**
- F207** Words in s. 178(2)(f) repealed (29.4.1996 with effect as specified in **Sch. 18 para. 17** of the amending Act) by 1996 c. 8, ss. 132, 205, **Sch. 18 para. 13**, **Sch. 41 Pt. V(8)**, note
- F208** S. 178(2)(gg) inserted (6.4.1992) (E.W.S.) by **Social Security Act 1990 (c. 27, SIF 113:1)** s. 17(10); S.I. 1992/632, **art. 2**
- F209** Words in s. 178(2)(gg) substituted (1.7.1992) by **Social Security (Consequential Provisions) Act 1992 (c. 6)**, ss. 4, 7(2), **Sch. 2 para. 107**
- F210** S. 178(2)(gh) inserted (5.10.1999) by 1999 c. 10, ss. 2, 20(2), **Sch. 2 Pt. IV para. 10(2)**
- F211** s. 178(2)(i) substituted (in relation to tax for the year 1992-1993 and subsequent years subject as mentioned in s. 289 of the substituting Act) by **Taxation of Chargeable Gains Act 1992 (c. 12)**, ss. 289, 290, **Sch. 10 para. 19(4)** (with ss. 60, 101(1), 171, 201(3))
- F212** Words in s. 178(2)(m) repealed (28.7.2000 with effect as mentioned in s. 11(6) of the amending Act) by 2000 c. 17, s. 156, **Sch. 40 Pt. II(17)**, Note 1
- F213** Words in s. 178(2)(m) repealed (29.4.1996 with effect as mentioned in **Sch. 7 paras. 32-35** of the amending Act) by 1996 c. 8, ss. 79(2), 205, **Sch. 7 para. 30**, **Sch. 41 Pt. V(2)**, note
- F214** “and” inserted by **Finance Act 1990 (c. 29, SIF 58)**, **s.118(8)**

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- F215** S. 178(2)(n) repealed (1.5.1995) by 1995 c. 4, s. 162, **Sch. 29 Pt. XII**
- F216** S. 178(2)(o) and word immediately preceding it inserted (G.B.) by Ports Act 1991 (c. 52, SIF 58), **s. 14(5)**.
- F217** It is provided that s. 178(2)(p) shall be inserted (5.10.1999) by 1999 c. 10, ss. 10(4), 20(2), **Sch. 4 para. 8(1)**
- F218** S. 178(2)(p) and word “and” preceding inserted (27.7.1999 with application in relation to instruments executed on or after 1.10.1999) by 1999 c. 16, **ss. 110(9)(10), 123(4)**

Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C42** S. 178 applied by Ports Act 1991 (c. 52, SIF 58), **s. 14(4)**.
S. 178 applied (27.7.1993) by 1993 c. 34, s. 173, **Sch. 19 Pt. II para. 11(4)**
S. 178 applied (1.9.1994 with effect as mentioned in s. 199 of 1994 c. 9) by 1970 c. 9, **s. 59C** (as inserted by 1994 c. 9, **s. 194**); S.I. 1998/3173, art. 2
S. 178 applied (1.5.1995) by 1995 c. 4, **s. 157(6)**
S. 178 extended (1.5.1995) by 1995 c. 4, **s. 157(6)**
S. 178 applied (31.7.1997) by 1997 c. 58, s. 3, **Sch. 2 para. 12(4)**
S. 178 applied (27.7.1999 with application to instruments executed on or after 1.10.1999) by 1891 c. 39, **s. 15A(3)** (as substituted (27.7.1999 with application to instruments executed on or after 1.10.1999) by 1999 c. 16, **s. 109(1)(4)**)
S. 178 applied (27.7.1999 with application in relation to instruments executed on or after 1.10.1999) by ss. 110(1)-(5)(10), 123(4)
S. 178 applied (5.10.1999) by 1999 c. 10, ss. 10(4), 20(2), **Sch. 4 para. 8(2)**
S. 178 applied (1.4.2000) by S.I. 2000/944, **art. 25**
S. 178 applied (1.4.2000) by s.I. 2000/944, art. 41(1)
S. 178 applied (1.4.2000) by S.I. 2000/944, **art. 46(1)**
- C43** *For regulations see S.I. 1989/1297 (in Part III Vol. 5). And see Tables I and O Vol. 1*
- C44** Power of appointment conferred by s. 178(7) partly exercised: 18.8.1989 appointed by S.I. 1989/1298 for all the enactments specified in s. 178(2) other than s. 87A of the 1970 Act and s. 826 of the 1988 Act

Marginal Citations

- M56** 1894 c. 30.
M57 1896 c. 28.
M58 1910 c. 8.
M59 1925 c. 20.
M60 1925 c. 21.
M61 1970 c. 9.
M62 1973 c. 51.
M63 1992 c.5.
M64 1992 c.8.
M65 1975 c. 22.
M66 1992 c. 12.
M67 1976 c. 24.
M68 1984 c. 51.
M69 1986 c. 41.

179 Provisions consequential on section 178. **U.K.**

- (1) The words “rate applicable under section 178 of the Finance Act 1989” shall be substituted—
- (a) for the words from “rate” to “annum” in—
- (i) section 18(1) of the ^{M70} Finance Act 1896,

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (ii) section 61(5) of the ^{M71} Finance (1909-10) Act 1910,
 - (iii) section 17(3) of the ^{M72} Law of Property Act 1925,
 - (iv) section 73(6) of the ^{M73} Land Registration Act 1925,
 - (v) paragraphs 15(1) and 16 of Schedule 2, and paragraph 8(4) of Schedule 5, to the ^{M74} Oil Taxation Act 1975,
 - ^{F219}(vi)
 - (vii) sections 824(1) and 825(2) of the Taxes Act 1988,
 - (b) for the words “prescribed rate” in—
 - (i) sections 86(1), 86A(1), 87(1), 87A(1) and (5) [^{F220}and 88(1)] of the ^{M75} Taxes Management Act 1970,
 - (ii) paragraph 3(4) of Schedule 16A to the ^{M76} Finance Act 1973, and
 - (iii) paragraph 3(4) of Schedule 19A to the Taxes Act 1988,
 - (c) for the words “rate which” onwards in—
 - (i) paragraph 59(1) of Schedule 8 to the ^{M77} Development Land Tax Act 1976, and
 - (ii) section 826(1) of the Taxes Act 1988,
 - (d) for the words “rate applicable under subsection (2) below” in section 233(1) of the ^{M78} Inheritance Tax Act 1984,
 - (e) for the words “rate for the time being applicable under section 233(2)(b) above” in subsection (3), and the words “rate for the time being applicable under section 233(2)(a) above” in subsection (4), of section 236 of that Act,
 - (f) for the words “appropriate rate” in section 92(2) of the ^{M79} Finance Act 1986, and
 - (g) for the words “rate prescribed from time to time by the Treasury by order” in section 160(5)(d) of the Taxes Act 1988.
- (2) In section 8(9) of the ^{M80} Finance Act 1894, for the words from “such interest” to “per cent.” there shall be substituted the words “interest at such rate not exceeding that applicable under section 178 of the Finance Act 1989”.
- (3) In section 236(4) of the Inheritance Tax Act 1984, for the words “as if section 233(1)(b) above had applied” there shall be substituted the words “from the end of the period mentioned in section 233(1)(b) above”.
- (4) Any amendment made by subsection (1), (2) or (3) above shall have effect in relation to any period for which section 178(1) above has effect for the purposes of the enactment concerned.
- (5) Section 146(11) of the Taxes Act 1988 shall have effect in relation to any year of assessment beginning after the day on which section 178(1) above has effect for the purposes of section 160 of that Act with the substitution of the words “applicable for the purposes of section 160” for the words “prescribed by the Treasury under section 160(5)”.

Textual Amendments

F219 S. 179(1)(a)(vi) repealed (6.3.1992 with effect as mentioned in s. 289(1)(2) of the repealing Act) by Taxation of Chargeable Gains Act 1992 (c. 12), ss. 289, 290, **Sch. 12** (with ss. 201(3), **Sch. 11** paras. 22, 26(2), 27)

F220 Words in s. 179(1)(b)(i) repealed (29.4.1996 with effect in accordance with **Sch. 18** para. 17 of the amending Act) by 1996 c. 8, s. 205, **Sch. 41 Pt. V**

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

Marginal Citations

- M70 1896 c. 28.
- M71 1910 c. 8.
- M72 1925 c. 20.
- M73 1925 c. 21.
- M74 1975 c. 22.
- M75 1970c. 9.
- M76 1973 c. 51.
- M77 1976 c. 24.
- M78 1984 c. 51.
- M79 1986 c.41.
- M80 1894 c. 30.

180 Repayment interest: period of accrual. U.K.

- (1) In section 48(1) of the ^{M81} Finance Act 1975, after the words “carry interest” there shall be inserted the words “from the date on which the sums were paid until the order for repayment is issued”.
- (2) In—
 - (a) paragraph 16 of Schedule 2 to the ^{M82} Oil Taxation Act 1975,
 - (b) section 105(7) of the ^{M83} Finance Act 1980,
 - (c) paragraph 13(4) and (5) of Schedule 16 to the ^{M84} Finance Act 1981, and
 - (d) paragraph 10(4) of Schedule 19 to the ^{M85} Finance Act 1982,
 for the word “repayment” there shall be substituted the words “the order for repayment is issued”.
- (3) In paragraph 59(1) of Schedule 8 to the ^{M86} Development Land Tax Act 1976, after the word “later,” there shall be inserted the words “until the order for repayment is issued”.
- (4) In section 235(1) of the ^{M87} Inheritance Tax Act 1984 (and paragraph 19(3) of Schedule 4 to the ^{M88} Finance Act 1975), after the word “made” there shall be inserted the words “until the order for repayment is issued”.
- (5) In section 92(2) of the ^{M89} Finance Act 1986, for the words “the time it was paid” there shall be substituted the words “the date on which the payment was made until the order for repayment is issued”.
- (6) In section 826(1) of the Taxes Act 1988, for the words “that repayment or payment is made” there shall be substituted the words “the order for repayment or payment is issued”.
- (7) The amendments made by this section shall be deemed always to have had effect.

Marginal Citations

- M81 1975 c. 7.
- M82 1975 c. 22.
- M83 1980 c. 48.
- M84 1981 c. 35.
- M85 1982 c. 39.
- M86 1976 c. 24.

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

M87 1984 c. 51.
M88 1975 c. 7.
M89 1986 c. 41.

Miscellaneous

[^{F221}181 Broadcasting: additional payments by programme contractors. U.K.]

- (1) ^{M90}The Broadcasting Act 1981 shall have effect with respect to additional payments payable by programme contractors under that Act subject to the amendments made by Part I, and with the substitution, for Schedule 4 to that Act, of the provisions contained in Part II, of Schedule 16 to this Act.
- (2) The transitional provisions made by Part III of that Schedule shall have effect.
- (3) This section shall come into force on 1st January 1990.]

Textual Amendments

F221 S. 181, Sch. 16 repealed (prosp. as mentioned in S.I. 1990/2347, art. 3(3)) by Broadcasting Act 1990 (c. 42, SIF 96), ss. 127-129, 134, 203(3), 204(2), Schs. 9-12, Sch. 21

Marginal Citations

M90 1981 c. 68.

182 Disclosure of information. U.K.]

- (1) A person who discloses any information which he holds or has held in the exercise of tax functions [^{F222}, tax credit functions] [^{F223} or social security functions] is guilty of an offence if it is information about any matter relevant, for the purposes of [^{F224} any of those functions—
 - (a) to tax or duty in the case of any identifiable person,
[to working families' tax credit or disabled person's tax credit in respect of any
 - (aa) identifiable person,]
 - (b) to contributions payable by or in respect of any identifiable person, or
 - (c) to statutory sick pay or statutory maternity pay in respect of any identifiable person.]
- (2) In this section “tax functions” means functions relating to tax or duty—
 - (a) of the Commissioners, the Board and their officers,
 - (b) of any person carrying out the administrative work of any tribunal mentioned in subsection (3) below, and
 - (c) of any other person providing, or employed in the provision of, services to any person mentioned in paragraph (a) or (b) above.

[^{F226}(2AA) In this section “tax credit functions” means the functions relating to working families' tax credit or disabled person's tax credit—

- (a) of the Board and their officers,
- (b) of any person carrying out the administrative work of the General Commissioners or the Special Commissioners, and

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (c) of any other person providing, or employed in the provision of, services to any person mentioned in paragraph (a) or (b) above.]

[^{F227}(2A) In this section “social security functions” means—

- (a) the functions relating to contributions, statutory sick pay or statutory maternity pay—
- (i) of the Board and their officers,
 - (ii) of any person carrying out the administrative work of the General Commissioners or the Special Commissioners, and
 - (iii) of any other person providing, or employed in the provision of, services to any person mentioned in sub-paragraph (i) or (ii) above, and
- (b) the functions under Part III of the Pension Schemes Act 1993 or Part III of the Pension Schemes (Northern Ireland) Act 1993 of the Board and their officers and any other person providing, or employed in the provision of, services to the Board or their officers.]

(3) The tribunals referred to in subsection (2)(b) above are—

- (a) the General Commissioners and the Special Commissioners,
- (b) any value added tax tribunal,
- (c) any referee or board of referees appointed [^{F228}for the purposes of section 80(3) of the ^{M91} Taxes Management Act 1970 or] under section 26(7) of the ^{M92} Capital Allowances Act 1968, and
- (d) any tribunal established under section 463 of the Taxes Act 1970 or section 706 of the Taxes Act 1988.

(4) A person who discloses any information which—

- (a) he holds or has held in the exercise of functions—
- (i) of the Comptroller Auditor General and any member of the staff of the National Audit Office, ^{F229} . . .
 - (ii) of the Parliamentary Commissioner for Administration and his officers,
 - [^{F230}(iii) of the Auditor General for Wales and any member of his staff, or
 - (iv) of the Welsh Administration Ombudsman and any member of his staff,]
- (b) is, or is derived from, information which was held by any person in the exercise of tax functions [^{F231}, tax credit functions][^{F232} or social security functions], and
- (c) is information about any matter relevant, for the purposes of [^{F233} tax functions [^{F234}, tax credit functions] or social security functions—
- (i) to tax or duty in the case of any identifiable person,
 [to working families’ tax credit or disabled person’s tax credit in ^{F235}(ia) respect of any identifiable person,]
 - (ii) to contributions payable by or in respect of any identifiable person, or
 - (iii) to statutory sick pay or statutory maternity pay in respect of any identifiable person]

is guilty of an offence.

(5) Subsections (1) and (4) above do not apply to any disclosure of information—

- (a) with lawful authority,

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (b) with the consent of any person in whose case the information is about a matter relevant to tax or duty [^{F236}, to working families' tax credit or disabled person's tax credit][^{F237} or to contributions, statutory sick pay or statutory maternity pay], or
 - (c) which has been lawfully made available to the public before the disclosure is made.
- (6) For the purposes of this section a disclosure of any information is made with lawful authority if, and only if, it is made—
- (a) by a Crown servant in accordance with his official duty,
 - (b) by any other person for the purposes of the function in the exercise of which he holds the information and without contravening any restriction duly imposed by the person responsible,
 - (c) to, or in accordance with an authorisation duly given by, the person responsible,
 - (d) in pursuance of any enactment or of any order of a court, or
 - (e) in connection with the institution of or otherwise for the purposes of any proceedings relating to any matter within the general responsibility of the Commissioners or, as the case requires, the Board,
- and in this subsection “the person responsible” means the Commissioners, the Board, the Comptroller [^{F238}, the Parliamentary Commissioner, the Auditor General for Wales or the Welsh Administration Ombudsman,] as the case requires.
- (7) It is a defence for a person charged with an offence under this section to prove that at the time of the alleged offence—
- (a) he believed that he had lawful authority to make the disclosure in question and had no reasonable cause to believe otherwise, or
 - (b) he believed that the information in question had been lawfully made available to the public before the disclosure was made and had no reasonable cause to believe otherwise.
- (8) A person guilty of an offence under this section is liable—
- (a) on conviction on indictment, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding two years or a fine or both, and
 - (b) on summary conviction, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding six months or a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum or both.
- (9) No prosecution for an offence under this section shall be instituted in England and Wales or in Northern Ireland except—
- (a) by the Commissioners or the Board, as the case requires, or
 - (b) by or with the consent of the Director of Public Prosecutions or, in Northern Ireland, the Director of Public Prosecutions for Northern Ireland.
- (10) In this section—
- “the Board” means the Commissioners of Inland Revenue,
- “the Commissioners” means the Commissioners of Customs and Excise,
- [^{F239}“contributions” means contributions under Part I of the Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 or Part I of the Social Security Contributions and Benefits (Northern Ireland) Act 1992;]

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

“Crown servant” has the same meaning as in the ^{M93} Official Secrets Act 1989, and
“tax or duty” means any tax or duty within the general responsibility of the Commissioners or the Board.

(11) In this section—

- (a) references to the Comptroller and Auditor General include the Comptroller and Auditor General for Northern Ireland,
- (b) references to the National Audit Office include the Northern Ireland Audit Office, and
- (c) references to the Parliamentary Commissioner for Administration include the Health Service Commissioner for England, the Health Service Commissioner for Wales, the Health Service Commissioner for Scotland, the ^{F240} Assembly Ombudsman for Northern Ireland] and the Northern Ireland Commissioner for Complaints.

(12) This section shall come into force on the repeal of section 2 of the ^{M94} Official Secrets Act 1911.

Textual Amendments

- F222** Words in s. 182(1) inserted (5.10.1999) by 1999 c. 10, **ss. 12(2)(a)**, 20(2)
- F223** Words in s. 182(1) inserted (1.4.1999) by 1999 c. 2, s. 6, **Sch. 6 para. 9(2)(a)**; S.I. 1999/527, art. 2(b), **Sch. 2**
- F224** S. 182(1)(a)-(c) and words immediately preceding substituted for words in s. 182(1) (1.4.1999) by 1999 c. 2, s. 6, **Sch. 6 para. 9(2)(b)**; S.I. 1999/527, art. 2(b), **Sch. 2**
- F225** S. 182(1)(aa) inserted (5.10.1999) by 1999 c. 10, **ss. 12(2)(b)**, 20(2)
- F226** S. 182(2AA) inserted (5.10.1999) by 1999 c. 10, **ss. 12(3)**, 20(2)
- F227** S. 182(2A) inserted (1.4.1999) by 1999 c. 2, s. 6, **Sch. 6 para. 9(3)**; S.I. 1999/527, art. 2(b), **Sch. 2**
- F228** Words in s. 182(3)(c) repealed (1.5.1995 with effect as mentioned in Sch. 29 Pt. VIII(16), note 5) by 1995 c. 4, s. 162, **Sch. 29 Pt. VIII(16)**
- F229** Word in s. 182(4)(a)(i) repealed (1.2.1999) by 1998 c. 38, s. 152, **Sch. 18 Pt. I** (with ss. 137(1), 139(2), 141(1), 143(2)); S.I. 1999/118, **art. 2**
- F230** S. 182(4)(a)(iii)(iv) inserted (1.2.1999) by 1998 c. 38, s. 125, **Sch. 12 para. 31(2)** (with ss. 137(1), 139(2), 141(1), 143(2)); S.I. 1999/118, **art. 2**
- F231** Words in s. 182(4)(b) inserted (5.10.1999) by 1999 c. 10, **ss. 12(4)(a)**, 20(2)
- F232** Words in s. 182(4)(b) inserted (1.4.1999) by 1999 c. 2, s. 6, **Sch. 6 para. 9(4)(a)**; S.I. 1999/527, art. 2(b), **Sch. 2**
- F233** S. 182(4)(c)(i)-(iii) and words immediately preceding substituted for words in s. 182(4)(c) (1.4.1999) by 1999 c. 2, s. 6, **Sch. 6 para. 9(4)(b)**; S.I. 1999/527, art. 2(b), **Sch. 2**
- F234** Words in s. 182(4)(c) inserted (5.10.1999) by 1999 c. 10, **ss. 12(4)(b)**, 20(2)
- F235** S. 182(4)(c)(ia) inserted (5.10.1999) by 1999 c. 10, **ss. 12(4)(b)**, 20(2)
- F236** Words in s. 182(5)(b) inserted (5.10.1999) by 1999 c. 10, **ss. 12(5)**, 20(2)
- F237** Words in s. 182(5)(b) inserted (1.4.1999) by 1999 c. 2, s. 6, **Sch. 6 para. 9(5)**; S.I. 1999/527, art. 2(b), **Sch. 2**
- F238** Words in s. 182(6)(e) substituted (1.2.1999) by 1998 c. 38, s. 125, **Sch. 12 para. 31(3)** (with ss. 137(1), 139(2), 141(1), 143(2)); S.I. 1999/118, **art. 2**
- F239** S. 182(10): definition of
“contributions”
inserted (1.4.1999) by 1999 c. 2, s. 6, **Sch. 6 para. 9(6)**; S.I. 1999/527, art. 2(b), **Sch. 2**
- F240** Words in s. 182(11)(c) substituted (16.7.1996) by S.I. 1996/1298 (N.I. 8), art. 21(1), **Sch. 5**

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

Modifications etc. (not altering text)

C45 S. 182 restricted (6.4.1997) by 1995 c. 26, s. 109(5) (with 121(5)); S.I. 1997/664, art. 2(3), Sch. Pt. II S. 182 restricted (6.4.1997) by S.I. 1995/3213 (N.I. 22), art. 107(2) (with art. 118(5)(6)); S.R. 1997/192, art. 2(b)

Marginal Citations

M91 1970 c. 9.

M92 1968 c. 3.

M93 1989c. 6.

M94 1911 c. 28.

[182A ^{F241}**Double taxation: disclosure of information.** **U.K.**

- (1) A person who discloses any information acquired by him in the exercise of his functions as a member of an advisory commission set up under the Arbitration Convention is guilty of an offence.
- (2) Subsection (1) above does not apply to any disclosure of information—
 - (a) with the consent of the person who supplied the information to the commission, or
 - (b) which has been lawfully made available to the public before the disclosure is made.
- (3) It is a defence for a person charged with an offence under this section to prove that at the time of the alleged offence he believed that the information in question had been lawfully made available to the public before the disclosure was made and had no reasonable cause to believe otherwise.
- (4) A person guilty of an offence under this section is liable—
 - (a) on conviction on indictment, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding two years or a fine or both;
 - (b) on summary conviction, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding six months or a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum or both.
- (5) No prosecution for an offence under this section shall be instituted in England and Wales or in Northern Ireland except—
 - (a) by the Board, or
 - (b) by or with the consent of the Director of Public Prosecutions or, in Northern Ireland, the Director of Public Prosecutions for Northern Ireland.
- (6) In this section—

“the Arbitration Convention” has the meaning given by section 815B(4) of the Taxes Act 1988;

“the Board” means the Commissioners of Inland Revenue.]

Textual Amendments

F241 S. 182A inserted (16.7.1992) by Finance (No. 2) Act 1992 (c. 48), s. 51(3)

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

183 Government securities: redemption and transfer. **U.K.**

- (1) In section 47 of the ^{M95} Finance Act 1942 (power to make regulations about transfer and registration of Government stock)—
- (a) the following paragraph shall be inserted after paragraph (b) of subsection (1)—
- “(bb) for the redemption of such stock and bonds;” and
- (b) the following subsection shall be inserted after that subsection—
- “(1A) Regulations under subsection (1) of this section may make provision authorising the Bank of England, in such circumstances and subject to such conditions as may be prescribed in the regulations, to transfer stock and bonds standing in their books in the name of a deceased person into the name of another person without requiring the production of probate, confirmation or letters of administration.”
- (2) In section 3(1) of the ^{M96} National Debt Act 1972 (power to make regulations about stock on the National Savings Stock Register) the following paragraph shall be inserted after paragraph (b)—
- “(bb) the redemption of stock registered in the register.”
- (3) After section 14 of the ^{M97} National Loans Act 1968 there shall be inserted—

“14A Redemption of securities held in Issue Department of Bank of England.

- (1) Any securities of Her Majesty’s Government in the United Kingdom which are for the time being held in the Issue Department of the Bank of England may be redeemed by the Treasury before maturity at market prices determined in such manner as may be agreed between the Treasury and the Bank.
- (2) Any expenses incurred by the Treasury in connection with the redemption of securities under subsection (1) above shall be paid out of the National Loans Fund.”

Marginal Citations

M95 1942 c. 21.

M96 1972 c. 65.

M97 1968 c. 13.

184 National savings accounts. **U.K.**

- (1) In section 2 of the ^{M98} National Savings Bank Act 1971 (general power to make regulations) after subsection (1) there shall be inserted—
- “(1A) Regulations under this section may restrict the classes of persons who may open accounts with the National Savings Bank, but any such restriction shall not apply to any account opened before the coming into force of the regulations imposing the restriction.”
- (2) In section 5 of that Act (interest on ordinary deposits) in subsection (1) for the words from the beginning to “in any ordinary deposit account” there shall be substituted

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

“The Director of Savings may, with the consent of the Treasury, from time to time determine the rate or rates at which interest is to be payable on amounts deposited in ordinary accounts or that no interest is to be payable on such amounts, and any such determination in relation to amounts deposited in any ordinary deposit account may be made”.

(3) After subsection (1) of section 5 of that Act there shall be inserted—

“(1A) The Director of Savings shall give notice in the London, Edinburgh and Belfast Gazettes of any determination under subsection (1) above; and any such determination may affect deposits received at or before, as well as after, the time the determination is made.”

(4) Subsection (5) of section 5 of that Act (rate of interest on ordinary deposits to be not less than 2.5 per cent per annum) shall cease to have effect.

(5) Subsections (2) and (3) above shall come into force on 1st October 1989.

Marginal Citations

M98 1971 c. 29.

185 Winding up of Redemption Annuities Account. U.K.

As soon as may be after the passing of this Act, the Treasury shall cause to be wound up the Redemption Annuities Account (which was established under section 25 of the Tithe^{M99} Act 1936 and which became redundant on the redemption on 1st October 1988 of all remaining stock issued under that Act), and the surplus standing to the credit of that account immediately before it is wound up shall be paid into the Consolidated Fund.

Marginal Citations

M99 1936 c. 43.

General

186 Interpretation etc. U.K.

(1) In this Act “the Taxes Act 1970” means the^{M100} Income and Corporation Taxes Act 1970 and “the Taxes Act 1988” means the^{M101} Income and Corporation Taxes Act 1988.

(2) Chapter II of Part I of this Act shall be construed as one with the^{M102} Value Added Tax Act 1983.

(3) Part II of this Act, so far as it relates to capital gains tax, shall be construed as one with the^{M103} Capital Gains Tax Act 1979.

Marginal Citations

M100 1970 c. 10.

M101 1988 c. 1.

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

M102 1983 c. 55.

M103 1979 c. 14.

187 Repeals. U.K.

- (1) The enactments specified in Schedule 17 to this Act (which include unnecessary enactments) are hereby repealed to the extent specified in the third column of that Schedule, but subject to any provision at the end of any Part of that Schedule.
- (2) The repeal of the enactments specified in Part XIV of Schedule 17 shall come into force on such day as the Treasury may appoint by order made by statutory instrument; and different days may be appointed for different enactments.

Modifications etc. (not altering text)

C46 Power of appointment conferred by s. 187(2) partly exercised: 30.9.1989 appointed by [S.I. 1989/1788](#), [art. 2](#) for the repeal of the enactments specified in Part XIV of Schedule 17 other than section 27 in Part II of the [Tithe Act 1936 \(c. 43\)](#)

188 Short title. U.K.

This Act may be cited as the Finance Act 1989.

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

SCHEDULES

SCHEDULE 1 **U.K.**

Section 6.

VEHICLES EXCISE DUTY: RATES

^{F242}PART I **U.K.**

Textual Amendments

F242 Sch. 1 Pt. I repealed (1.9.1994) by 1994 c. 22, ss. 65, 66(1), **Sch. 5 Pt. I** (with s. 57(4))

PART II ^{F243} **U.K.**

Textual Amendments

F243 S. 6(3)(4), Sch. 1 Pt. II, Sch. 2 para. 3 repealed by Finance Act 1990 (c. 29, SIF 58), s. 132, **Sch. 19 Pt. II** Note 3

SCHEDULE 2 **U.K.**

Section 8.

VEHICLES EXCISE DUTY: SPECIAL MACHINES

^{F244}₁

Textual Amendments

F244 Sch. 2 paras. 1, 2, 4 repealed (1.9.1994) by 1994 c. 22, ss. 65, 66(1), **Sch. 5 Pt. I** (with s. 57(4))

^{F245}₂

Textual Amendments

F245 Sch. 2 paras. 1, 2, 4 repealed (1.9.1994) by 1994 c. 22, ss. 65, 66(1), **Sch. 5 Pt. I** (with s. 57(4))

³_{F246}

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

Textual Amendments

F246 S. 6(3)(4), Sch. 1 Pt. II, Sch. 2 para. 3 repealed by Finance Act 1990 (c. 29, SIF 58), s. 132, **Sch. 19 Pt. II** Note 3

^{F247}4

Textual Amendments

F247 Sch. 2 paras. 1, 2, 4 repealed (1.9.1994) by 1994 c. 22, ss. 65, 66(1), **Sch. 5 Pt. I** (with s. 57(4))

^{F248}SCHEDULE 3 **U.K.**

Textual Amendments

F248 Sch. 3 repealed (1.9.1994) by 1994 c. 23, ss. 100(2), 101(1), **Sch. 15**

^{F249}SCHEDULE 4 **U.K.**

Textual Amendments

F249 Sch. 4 repealed (19.3.1997 with effect as mentioned in Sch. 18 Pt. VI(3) notes 1, 2 of the amending Act) by 1997 c. 16, ss. 61(2)(3), 113, **Sch. 18 Pt. VI(3)**

SCHEDULE 5 **U.K.**

Section 74.

EMPLOYEE SHARE OWNERSHIP TRUSTS

Modifications etc. (not altering text)

C47 Sch. 5 applied (6.3.1992 with effect as mentioned in s. 289(1)(2) of the applying Act) by Taxation of Chargeable Gains Act 1992 (c. 12), ss. **228(7)**, 235(8), 289 (with ss. 60, 101(1), 171, 201(3))

Qualifying trusts

- 1 A trust is a qualifying employee share ownership trust at the time it is established if the conditions set out in paragraphs 2 to 11 below are satisfied in relation to the trust at that time.

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

Modifications etc. (not altering text)

C48 See [Finance Act 1990 \(c. 29\)](#) ss.31–40—roll-over relief for disposal of shares to employee share ownership trusts

General

- 2 (1) The trust must be established under a deed (the trust deed).
- (2) The trust must be established by a company (the founding company) which, at the time the trust is established, is resident in the United Kingdom and not controlled by another company.

Modifications etc. (not altering text)

C49 See [Finance Act 1990 \(c. 29\)](#) ss.31–40—roll-over relief for disposal of shares to employee share ownership trusts

Trustees

- 3 (1) The trust deed must provide for the establishment of a body of trustees.
- (2) The trust deed must—
- (a) appoint the initial trustees;
 - (b) contain rules for the retirement and removal of trustees;
 - (c) contain rules for the appointment of replacement and additional trustees.
- (3) The trust deed must provide that at any time while the trust subsists (the relevant time)—
- (a) the number of trustees must not be less than three;
 - (b) all the trustees must be resident in the United Kingdom;
 - (c) the trustees must include one person who is a trust corporation, a solicitor, or a member of such other professional body as the Board may from time to time allow for the purposes of this paragraph;
 - (d) most of the trustees must be persons who are not and have never been directors of any company which falls within the founding company's group at the relevant time;
 - (e) most of the trustees must be persons who are employees of companies which fall within the founding company's group at the relevant time, and who do not have and have never had a material interest in any such company;
 - (f) the trustees falling within paragraph (e) above must, before being appointed as trustees, have been selected by a majority of the employees of the companies falling within the founding company's group at the time of this selection or by persons elected to represent those employees.
- (4) For the purposes of sub-paragraph (3) above a company falls within the founding company's group at a particular time if—
- (a) it is the founding company, or
 - (b) it is at that time resident in the United Kingdom and controlled by the founding company.

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

[^{F250}(5) This paragraph applies in relation to trusts established on or before the day on which the Finance Act 1994 was passed.]

Textual Amendments

F250 Sch. 5 para. 3(5) inserted (3.5.1994) by 1994 c. 9, s. 102, Sch. 13 para. 2

Modifications etc. (not altering text)

C50 See Finance Act 1990 (c. 29) ss.31–40—roll-over relief for disposal of shares to employee share ownership trusts

C51 Schedule 5 para. 3(3)(c) amended (1.1.1992) by S.I. 1991/2684, arts. 2(1), 4, Sch. 1

[^{F251}3A Where a trust is established after the day on which the Finance Act 1994 was passed, the trust deed must make provision as mentioned in one of paragraphs (a) to (c) below—

- (a) provision for the establishment of a body of trustees and complying with paragraph 3(2) to (4) above;
- (b) provision for the establishment of a body of trustees and complying with paragraph 3B(2) to (9) below;
- (c) provision that at any time while the trust subsists there must be a single trustee.]

Textual Amendments

F251 Sch. 5 paras. 3A-3C inserted (3.5.1994) by 1994 c. 9, s. 102, Sch. 13 para. 3

^{F252}3B (1) The following are the provisions that must be complied with under paragraph 3A(b) above.

- (2) The trust deed must—
 - (a) appoint the initial trustees;
 - (b) contain rules for the retirement and removal of trustees;
 - (c) contain rules for the appointment of replacement and additional trustees.
- (3) The trust deed must be so framed that at any time while the trust subsists the conditions set out in sub-paragraph (4) below are fulfilled as regards the persons who are then trustees; and in that sub-paragraph “the relevant time” means that time.
- (4) The conditions are that—
 - (a) the number of trustees is not less than three;
 - (b) all the trustees are resident in the United Kingdom;
 - (c) the trustees include at least one person who is a professional trustee and at least two persons who are non-professional trustees;
 - (d) at least half of the non-professional trustees were, before being appointed as trustees, selected in accordance with sub-paragraph (7) or (8) below;
 - (e) all the trustees so selected are persons who are employees of companies which fall within the founding company’s group at the relevant time, and who do not have and have never had a material interest in any such company.
- (5) For the purposes of this paragraph a trustee is a professional trustee at a particular time if—

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) the trustee is then a trust corporation, a solicitor, or a member of such other professional body as the Board may at that time allow for the purposes of this sub-paragraph,
 - (b) the trustee is not then an employee or director of any company then falling within the founding company's group, and
 - (c) the trustee meets the requirements of sub-paragraph (6) below;
- and for the purposes of this paragraph a trustee is a non-professional trustee at a particular time if the trustee is not then a professional trustee for those purposes.
- (6) A trustee meets the requirements of this sub-paragraph if—
 - (a) he was appointed as an initial trustee and, before being appointed as trustee, was selected by (and only by) the persons who later became the non-professional initial trustees, or
 - (b) he was appointed as a replacement or additional trustee and, before being appointed as trustee, was selected by (and only by) the persons who were the non-professional trustees at the time of the selection.
 - (7) Trustees are selected in accordance with this sub-paragraph if the process of selection is one under which—
 - (a) all the persons who are employees of the companies which fall within the founding company's group at the time of the selection, and who do not have and have never had a material interest in any such company, are (so far as is reasonably practicable) given the opportunity to stand for selection,
 - (b) all the employees of the companies falling within the founding company's group at the time of the selection are (so far as is reasonably practicable) given the opportunity to vote, and
 - (c) persons gaining more votes are preferred to those gaining less.
 - (8) Trustees are selected in accordance with this sub-paragraph if they are selected by persons elected to represent the employees of the companies falling within the founding company's group at the time of the selection.
 - (9) For the purposes of this paragraph a company falls within the founding company's group at a particular time if—
 - (a) it is at that time resident in the United Kingdom, and
 - (b) it is the founding company or it is at that time controlled by the founding company.

Textual Amendments

F252 Sch. 5 paras. 3A-3C inserted (3.5.1994) by 1994 c. 9, s. 102, Sch. 13 para. 3

- ^{F253}3C (1) This paragraph applies where the trust deed provides that at any time while the trust subsists there must be a single trustee.
- (2) The trust deed must—
 - (a) be so framed that at any time while the trust subsists the trustee is a company which at that time is resident in the United Kingdom and controlled by the founding company;
 - (b) appoint the initial trustee;
 - (c) contain rules for the removal of any trustee and for the appointment of a replacement trustee.

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (3) The trust deed must be so framed that at any time while the trust subsists the company which is then the trustee is a company so constituted that the conditions set out in sub-paragraph (4) below are then fulfilled as regards the persons who are then directors of the company; and in that sub-paragraph “the relevant time” is that time and “the trust company” is that company.
- (4) The conditions are that—
- (a) the number of directors is not less than three;
 - (b) all the directors are resident in the United Kingdom;
 - (c) the directors include at least one person who is a professional director and at least two persons who are non-professional directors;
 - (d) at least half of the non-professional directors were, before being appointed as directors, selected in accordance with sub-paragraph (7) or (8) below;
 - (e) all the directors so selected are persons who are employees of companies which fall within the founding company’s group at the relevant time, and who do not have and have never had a material interest in any such company.
- (5) For the purposes of this paragraph a director is a professional director at a particular time if—
- (a) the director is then a solicitor or a member of such other professional body as the Board may at that time allow for the purposes of this sub-paragraph,
 - (b) the director is not then an employee of any company then falling within the founding company’s group,
 - (c) the director is not then a director of any such company (other than the trust company), and
 - (d) the director meets the requirements of sub-paragraph (6) below;
- and for the purposes of this paragraph a director is a non-professional director at a particular time if the director is not then a professional director for those purposes.
- (6) A director meets the requirements of this sub-paragraph if—
- (a) he was appointed as an initial director and, before being appointed as director, was selected by (and only by) the persons who later became the non-professional initial directors, or
 - (b) he was appointed as a replacement or additional director and, before being appointed as director, was selected by (and only by) the persons who were the non-professional directors at the time of the selection.
- (7) Directors are selected in accordance with this sub-paragraph if the process of selection is one under which—
- (a) all the persons who are employees of the companies which fall within the founding company’s group at the time of the selection, and who do not have and have never had a material interest in any such company, are (so far as is reasonably practicable) given the opportunity to stand for selection,
 - (b) all the employees of the companies falling within the founding company’s group at the time of the selection are (so far as is reasonably practicable) given the opportunity to vote, and
 - (c) persons gaining more votes are preferred to those gaining less.
- (8) Directors are selected in accordance with this sub-paragraph if they are selected by persons elected to represent the employees of the companies falling within the founding company’s group at the time of the selection.

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (9) For the purposes of this paragraph a company falls within the founding company's group at a particular time if—
- (a) it is at that time resident in the United Kingdom, and
 - (b) it is the founding company or it is at that time controlled by the founding company.

Textual Amendments

F253 Sch. 5 paras. 3A-3C inserted (3.5.1994) by 1994 c. 9, s. 102, **Sch. 13 para. 3**

Beneficiaries

- 4 (1) The trust deed must contain provision as to the beneficiaries under the trust, in accordance with the following rules.
- (2) The trust deed must provide that a person is a beneficiary at a particular time (the relevant time) if—
- (a) he is at the relevant time an employee or director of a company which at that time falls within the founding company's group,
 - (b) at each given time in a qualifying period he was an employee or director of a company falling within the founding company's group at that given time, and
 - (c) ^{F254} in the case of a director, at that given time he worked as a director of the company concerned at the rate of at least 20 hours a week (ignoring such matters as holidays and sickness).
- ^{F255}(2A) The trust deed may provide that a person is a beneficiary at a given time if at that time he is eligible to participate in a savings-related share option scheme within the meaning of Schedule 9 to the Taxes Act 1988—
- (a) which was established by a company within the founding company's group, and
 - (b) which is approved under that Schedule.
- ^{F255}(2B) Where a trust deed contains a rule conforming with sub-paragraph (2A) above it must provide that the only powers and duties which the trustees may exercise in relation to persons who are beneficiaries by virtue only of that rule are those which may be exercised in accordance with the provisions of a scheme such as is mentioned in that sub-paragraph.]
- (3) The trust deed may provide that a person is a beneficiary at a particular time (the relevant time) if—
- (a) he has at each given time in a qualifying period been an employee or director of a company falling within the founding company's group at that given time,
 - (b) he has ceased to be an employee or director of the company or the company has ceased to fall within that group, and
 - (c) at the relevant time a period of not more than eighteen months has elapsed since he so ceased or the company so ceased (as the case may be).
- (4) The trust deed may provide for a person to be a beneficiary if the person is a charity and the circumstances are such that—
- (a) there is no person who is a beneficiary within any rule which is included in the deed and conforms with sub-paragraph (2) ^{F256}, (2A)] or (3) above, and

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (b) the trust is in consequence being wound up.
- (5) For the purposes of sub-paragraph (2) above a qualifying period is a period—
- (a) whose length is ^{F257} . . . not more than five years,
 - (b) whose length is specified in the trust deed, and
 - (c) which ends with the relevant time (within the meaning of that sub-paragraph).
- (6) For the purposes of sub-paragraph (3) above a qualifying period is a period—
- (a) whose length is equal to that of the period specified in the trust deed for the purposes of a rule which conforms with sub-paragraph (2) above, and
 - (b) which ends when the person or company (as the case may be) ceased as mentioned in sub-paragraph (3)(b) above.
- (7) The trust deed must not provide for a person to be a beneficiary unless she falls within any rule which is included in the deed and conforms with sub-paragraph (2) [^{F258}, (2A)], (3) or (4) above.
- (8) The trust deed must provide that, notwithstanding any other rule which is included in it, a person cannot be a beneficiary at a particular time (the relevant time) [^{F259} by virtue of a rule which conforms with sub-paragraph (2), (3) or (4) above] if—
- (a) at that time he has a material interest in the founding company, or
 - (b) at any time in the period of one year preceding the relevant time he has had a material interest in that company.
- (9) For the purposes of this paragraph a company falls within the founding company's group at a particular time if—
- (a) it is at that time resident in the United Kingdom, and
 - (b) it is the founding company or it is at that time controlled by the founding company.
- (10) For the purposes of this paragraph a charity is a body of persons established for charitable purposes only.

Textual Amendments

F254 Words in *Sch. 5 para. 4(2)(c)* substituted (1.5.1995 with effect as mentioned in *s. 137(9)* of the amending Act) by *1995 c. 4, s. 137(5)*

F255 *Sch. 5 para. 4(2A)(2B)* inserted (29.4.1996 with effect in relation to trusts established on or after 29.4.1996) by *1996 c. 8, s. 120(1)(12)*

F256 Words in *Sch. 5 para. 4(4)* inserted (29.4.1996 with effect in relation to trusts established on or after 29.4.1996) by *1996 c. 8, s. 120(5)(12)*

F257 Words in *Sch. 5 para. 4(5)(a)* repealed (29.4.1996 with effect in relation to trusts established on or after 29.4.1996) by *1996 c. 8, s. 119(1)(2), 205, Sch. 41 Pt. V(5)*, note 4

F258 Words in *Sch. 5 para. 4(7)* inserted (29.4.1996 with effect in relation to trusts established on or after 29.4.1996) by *1996 c. 8, s. 120(6)(12)*

F259 Words in *Sch. 5 para. 4(8)* inserted (29.4.1996 with effect in relation to trusts established on or after 29.4.1996) by *1996 c. 8, s. 120(7)(12)*

Modifications etc. (not altering text)

C52 See *Finance Act 1990 (c. 29) ss.31–40—roll-over relief for disposal of shares to employee share ownership trusts*

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

Trustees' functions

- 5 (1) The trust deed must contain provision as to the functions of the trustees.
- (2) The functions of the trustees must be so expressed that it is apparent that their general functions are—
- (a) to receive sums from the founding company and other sums (by way of loan or otherwise);
 - (b) to acquire securities;
 - (c) to transfer securities or sums (or both) to persons who are beneficiaries under the terms of the trust deed;
 - [^{F260}(cc) to grant rights to acquire shares to persons who are beneficiaries under the terms of the trust deed;]
 - (d) to transfer securities to the trustees of profit sharing schemes approved under Schedule 9 to the Taxes Act 1988, for a price not less than the price the securities might reasonably be expected to fetch on a sale in the open market;
 - (e) pending transfer, to retain the securities and to manage them (whether by exercising voting rights or otherwise).

Textual Amendments

F260 Sch. 5 para. 5(2)(cc) inserted (29.4.1996 with effect in relation to trusts established on or after 29.4.1996) by 1996 c. 8, s. 120(8)(12)

Modifications etc. (not altering text)

C53 See Finance Act 1990 (c. 29) ss.31–40—roll-over relief for disposal of shares to employee share ownership trusts

Sums

- 6 (1) The trust deed must require that any sum received by the trustees—
- (a) must be expended within the relevant period,
 - (b) may be expended only for one or more of the qualifying purposes, and
 - (c) must, while it is retained by them, be kept as cash or be kept in an account with a bank or building society.
- (2) For the purposes of sub-paragraph (1) above the relevant period is the period of nine months beginning with the day found as follows—
- (a) in a case where the sum is received from the founding company, or a company which is controlled by that company at the time the sum is received, the day following the end of the period of account in which the sum is charged as an expense of the company from which it is received;
 - (b) in any other case, the day the sum is received.
- (3) For the purposes of sub-paragraph (1) above each of the following is a qualifying purpose—
- (a) the acquisition of shares in the founding company;
 - (b) the repayment of sums borrowed;
 - (c) the payment of interest on sums borrowed;
 - (d) the payment of any sum to a person who is a beneficiary under the terms of the trust deed;

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (e) the meeting of expenses.
- (4) The trust deed must provide that, in ascertaining for the purposes of a relevant rule whether a particular sum has been expended, sums received earlier by the trustees shall be treated as expended before sums received by them later; and a relevant rule is one which is included in the trust deed and conforms with sub-paragraph (1) above.
- (5) The trust deed must provide that, where the trustees pay sums to different beneficiaries at the same time, all the sums must be paid on similar terms.
- (6) For the purposes of sub-paragraph (5) above, the fact that terms vary according to the levels of remuneration of beneficiaries, the length of their service, or similar factors, shall not be regarded as meaning that the terms are not similar.

Modifications etc. (not altering text)

C54 See Finance Act 1990 (c. 29) ss.31–40—roll-over relief for disposal of shares to employee share ownership trusts

Securities

- 7 (1) Subject to paragraph 8 below, the trust deed must provide that securities acquired by the trustees must be shares in the founding company which—
 - (a) form part of the ordinary share capital of the company,
 - (b) are fully paid up,
 - (c) are not redeemable, and
 - (d) are not subject to any restrictions other than restrictions which attach to all shares of the same class or a restriction authorised by sub-paragraph (2) below.
- (2) Subject to sub-paragraph (3) below, a restriction is authorised by this sub-paragraph if—
 - (a) it is imposed by the founding company's articles of association,
 - (b) it requires all shares held by directors or employees of the founding company, or of any other company which it controls for the time being, to be disposed of on ceasing to be so held, and
 - (c) it requires all shares acquired, in pursuance of rights or interests obtained by such directors or employees, by persons who are not (or have ceased to be) such directors or employees to be disposed of when they are acquired.
- (3) A restriction is not authorised by sub-paragraph (2) above unless—
 - (a) any disposal required by the restriction will be by way of sale for a consideration in money on terms specified in the articles of association, and
 - (b) the articles also contain general provisions by virtue of which any person disposing of shares of the same class (whether or not held or acquired as mentioned in sub-paragraph (2) above) may be required to sell them on terms which are the same as those mentioned in paragraph (a) above.
- (4) The trust deed must provide that shares in the founding company may not be acquired by the trustees at a price exceeding the price they might reasonably be expected to fetch on a sale in the open market.

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (5) The trust deed must provide that shares in the founding company may not be acquired by the trustees at a time when that company is controlled by another company.

Modifications etc. (not altering text)

C55 See Finance Act 1990 (c. 29) ss.31–40—roll-over relief for disposal of shares to employee share ownership trusts

- 8 The trust deed may provide that the trustees may acquire securities other than shares in the founding company—
- (a) if they are securities issued to the trustees in exchange in circumstances mentioned in section [F261 135(1) of the M112 Taxation of Chargeable Gains Act 1992], or
 - (b) if they are securities acquired by the trustees as a result of a reorganisation, and the original shares the securities represent are shares in the founding company (construing “reorganisation” and “original shares” in accordance with section [F261 126] of that Act).

Textual Amendments

F261 Words in Sch. 5 para. 8 substituted (6.3.1992 with effect as mentioned in s. 289(1)(2) of the substituting Act) by Taxation of Chargeable Gains Act 1992 (c. 12), ss. 289, 290, Sch. 10 para. 19(5) (with s. 60, 101(1), 201(3))

Modifications etc. (not altering text)

C56 See Finance Act 1990 (c. 29) ss.31–40—roll-over relief for disposal of shares to employee share ownership trusts

Marginal Citations

M112 1992 c. 12.

- 9 (1) The trust deed must provide that—
- (a) where the trustees transfer securities to a beneficiary, they must do so on qualifying terms;
 - (b) the trustees must transfer securities before the expiry of the [F262 qualifying period] beginning with the date on which they acquired them.
- (2) For the purposes of sub-paragraph (1) above a transfer of securities is made on qualifying terms if—
- (a) all the securities transferred at the same time [F263 other than those transferred on a transfer such as is mentioned in sub-paragraph (2ZA) below] are transferred on similar terms,
 - (b) securities have been offered to all the persons who are beneficiaries under the terms of the trust deed [F264 by virtue of a rule which conforms with paragraph 4(2), (3) or (4) above] when the transfer is made, and
 - (c) securities are transferred to all such [F265 persons] who have accepted.
- [F266 (2ZA) For the purposes of sub-paragraph (1) above a transfer of securities is also made on qualifying terms if—
- (a) it is made to a person exercising a right to acquire shares, and

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (b) that right was obtained in accordance with the provisions of a savings-related share option scheme within the meaning of Schedule 9 to the Taxes Act 1988—
 - (i) which was established by, or by a company controlled by, the founding company, and
 - (ii) which is approved under that Schedule, and
- (c) that right is being exercised in accordance with the provisions of that scheme, and
- (d) the consideration for the transfer is payable to the trustees.]

[^{F267}(2A) For the purposes of sub-paragraph (1) above the qualifying period is—

- (a) seven years, in the case of trusts established on or before the day on which the Finance Act 1994 was passed;
 - (b) twenty years, in the case of other trusts.]
- (3) For the purposes of sub-paragraph (2) above, the fact that terms vary according to the levels of remuneration of beneficiaries, the length of their service, or similar factors, shall not be regarded as meaning that the terms are not similar.
- (4) The trust deed must provide that, in ascertaining for the purposes of a relevant rule whether particular securities are transferred, securities acquired earlier by the trustees shall be treated as transferred by them before securities acquired by them later; and a relevant rule is one which is included in the trust deed and conforms with sub-paragraph (1) above.

Textual Amendments

- F262** Words in *Sch. 5 para. 9(1)(b)* substituted (3.5.1994) by 1994 c. 9, s. 102, **Sch. 13 para. 7(2)**
- F263** Words in *Sch. 5 para. 9(2)(a)* inserted (29.4.1996 with effect in relation to trusts established on or after 29.4.1996) by 1996 c. 8, s. 120(9)(a)(12)
- F264** Words in *Sch. 5 para. 9(2)(b)* inserted (29.4.1996 with effect in relation to trusts established on or after 29.4.1996) by 1996 c. 8, s. 120(9)(b)(12)
- F265** Words in *Sch. 5 para. 9(2)(c)* inserted (29.4.1996 with effect in relation to trusts established on or after 29.4.1996) by 1996 c. 8, s. 120(9)(c)(12)
- F266** *Sch. 5 para. 9(2ZA)* inserted (29.4.1996 with effect in relation to trusts established on or after 29.4.1996) by 1996 c. 8, s. 120(10)(12)
- F267** *Sch. 5 para. 9(2A)* inserted (3.5.1994) by 1994 c. 9, s. 102, **Sch. 13 para. 7(3)**

Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C57** See *Finance Act 1990 (c. 29) ss.31–40—roll-over relief for disposal of shares to employee share ownership trusts*

Other features

- 10 The trust deed must not contain features which are not essential or reasonably incidental to the purpose of acquiring sums and securities, [^{F268}granting rights to acquire shares to persons who are eligible to participate in savings-related share option schemes approved under Schedule 9 to the Taxes Act 1988, transferring shares to such persons,] transferring sums and securities to employees and directors, and transferring securities to the trustees of profit sharing schemes approved under [^{F269}that Schedule].

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

Textual Amendments

F268 Words in [Sch. 5 para. 10](#) inserted (29.4.1996 with effect in relation to trusts established on or after 29.4.1996) by [1996 c. 8, s. 120\(11\)\(a\)\(12\)](#)

F269 Words in [Sch. 5 para. 10](#) substituted (29.4.1996 with effect in relation to trusts established on or after 29.4.1996) by [1996 c. 8, s. 120\(11\)\(b\)\(12\)](#)

Modifications etc. (not altering text)

C58 See [Finance Act 1990 \(c. 29\)](#) ss.31–40—*roll-over relief for disposal of shares to employee share ownership trusts*

Rules about acquisition etc.

- 11 (1) The trust deed must provide that, for the purposes of the deed, the trustees—
- (a) acquire securities when they become entitled to them;
 - (b) transfer securities to another person when that other becomes entitled to them;
 - (c) retain securities if they remain entitled to them.
- (2) But if the deed provides as mentioned in paragraph 8 above, it must provide for the following exceptions to any rule which is included in it and conforms with subparagraph (1)(a) above, namely, that—
- (a) if securities are issued to the trustees in exchange in circumstances mentioned in section [^{F270}135(1) of the ^{M113}Taxation of Chargeable Gains Act 1992], they shall be treated as having acquired them when they became entitled to the securities for which they are exchanged;
 - (b) if the trustees become entitled to securities as a result of a reorganisation, they shall be treated as having acquired them when they became entitled to the original shares which those securities represent (construing “reorganisation” and “original shares” in accordance with section [^{F270}126] of that Act).
- (3) The trust deed must provide that—
- (a) if the trustees agree to take a transfer of securities, for the purposes of the deed they become entitled to them when the agreement is made and not on a later transfer made pursuant to the agreement;
 - (b) if the trustees agree to transfer securities to another person, for the purposes of the deed the other person becomes entitled to them when the agreement is made and not on a later transfer made pursuant to the agreement.

Textual Amendments

F270 Words in [Sch. 5 para. 11](#) substituted (6.3.1992 with effect as mentioned in s. 289(1)(2) of the substituting Act) by [Taxation of Chargeable Gains Act 1992 \(c. 12\)](#), ss. 289, 290, [Sch. 10 para. 19\(5\)](#) (with s. 60, 101(1), 201(3))

Modifications etc. (not altering text)

C59 See [Finance Act 1990 \(c. 29\)](#) ss.31–40—*roll-over relief for disposal of shares to employee share ownership trusts*

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

Marginal Citations

M113 1992 c. 12.

Position after trust's establishment

- 12 A trust which was at the time it was established a qualifying employees share ownership trust shall continue to be one, except that it shall not be such a trust at any time when the requirements mentioned in paragraph 3(3)(a) to (f) above are not satisfied. [^{F271}This paragraph applies in relation to trusts established on or before the day on which the Finance Act 1994 was passed.]

Textual Amendments

F271 Words in Sch. 5 para. 12 inserted (3.5.1994) by 1994 c. 9, s. 102, Sch. 13 para. 4

Modifications etc. (not altering text)

C60 See Finance Act 1990 (c. 29) ss.31–40—roll-over relief for disposal of shares to employees share ownership trusts

[^{F272}12(A)] Subject to sub-paragraphs (2) and (3) below, a trust which was at the time it was established a qualifying employee share ownership trust shall continue to be one.

- (2) If the trust deed makes provision under paragraph 3A(a) above, the trust shall not be a qualifying employee share ownership trust at any time when the requirements mentioned in paragraph 3(3)(a) to (f) above are not satisfied.
- (3) If the trust deed makes provision under paragraph 3A(b) above, the trust shall not be a qualifying employee share ownership trust at any time when the conditions mentioned in paragraph 3B(4)(a) to (e) above are not satisfied.
- (4) If the trust deed makes provision under paragraph 3A(c) above, the trust shall not be a qualifying employee share ownership trust at any time when—
 - (a) there is not a single trustee,
 - (b) the trustee is not a company which is resident in the United Kingdom and controlled by the founding company, or
 - (c) the conditions mentioned in paragraph 3C(4)(a) to (e) above are not satisfied as regards the directors of the trustee.
- (5) This paragraph applies in relation to trusts established after the day on which the Finance Act 1994 was passed.]

Textual Amendments

F272 Sch. 5 para. 12A inserted (3.5.1994) by 1994 c. 9, s. 102, Sch. 13 para. 5

- 13 A trust is an employee share ownership trust at a particular time (the relevant time) if it was a qualifying employee share ownership trust at the time it was established; and it is immaterial whether or not it is a qualifying employee share ownership trust at the relevant time.

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

Modifications etc. (not altering text)

C61 See [Finance Act 1990 \(c. 29\)](#) ss.31–40—roll-over relief for disposal of shares to employee share ownership trusts

Interpretation

- 14 For the purposes of this Schedule the following are securities—
- (a) shares;
 - (b) debentures.

Modifications etc. (not altering text)

C62 See [Finance Act 1990 \(c. 29\)](#) ss.31–40—roll-over relief for disposal of shares to employee share ownership trusts

- 15 For the purposes of this Schedule, the question whether one company is controlled by another shall be construed in accordance with section 840 of the Taxes Act 1988.

Modifications etc. (not altering text)

C63 See [Finance Act 1990 \(c. 29\)](#) ss.31–40—roll-over relief for disposal of shares to employee share ownership trusts

- 16 (1) For the purposes of this Schedule a person shall be treated as having a material interest in a company if he, either on his own or with one or more of his associates, or if any associate of his with or without other such associates,—
- (a) is the beneficial owner of, or able (directly or through the medium of other companies or by any other indirect means) to control, more than 5 percent. of the ordinary share capital of the company, or
 - (b) possesses, or is entitled to acquire, such rights as would, in the event of the winding-up of the company or in any other circumstances, give an entitlement to receive more than 5 per cent. of the assets which would then be available for distribution among the participators.
- (2) In this paragraph—
- (a) “associate” has the same meaning as in section 417(3) and (4) of the Taxes Act 1988, but subject to sub-paragraph (3) below,
 - (b) “control” has the meaning given by section 840 of that Act, and
 - (c) “participator” has the same meaning as in Part XI of that Act.
- (3) Where a person has an interest in shares or obligations of the company as a beneficiary of an employee benefit trust, the trustees shall not be regarded as associates of his by reason only of that interest unless sub-paragraph (5) below applies in relation to him.
- (4) In sub-paragraph (3) above “employee benefit trust” has the same meaning as in paragraph 7 of Schedule 8 to the Taxes Act 1988, except that in its application for this purpose paragraph 7(5)(b) of that Schedule shall have effect as if it referred to the day on which this Act was passed instead of to 14th March 1989.

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (5) This sub-paragraph applies in relation to a person if at any time on or after the day on which this Act was passed—
 - (a) he, either on his own or with any one or more of his associates, or
 - (b) any associate of his, with or without other such associates,
 has been the beneficial owner of, or able (directly or through the medium of other companies or by any other indirect means) to control, more than 5 percent. of the ordinary share capital of the company.
- (6) Sub-paragraphs (9) to (12) of paragraph 7 of Schedule 8 to the Taxes Act 1988 shall apply for the purposes of sub-paragraph (5) above as they apply for the purposes of that paragraph.

Modifications etc. (not altering text)
C64 See Finance Act 1990 (c. 29) ss.31–40—roll-over relief for disposal of shares to employee share ownership trusts

[^{F273}17 For the purposes of this Schedule a trust is established when the deed under which it is established is executed.]

Textual Amendments
F273 Sch. 5 para. 17 inserted (3.5.1994) by 1994 c. 9, s. 102, Sch. 13 para. 8

SCHEDULE 6 **U.K.**

Section 75.

RETIREMENT BENEFITS SCHEMES

PART I U.K.

AMENDMENTS OF TAXES ACT

Preliminary

1 The Taxes Act 1988 shall be amended as mentioned in the following provisions of this Part of this Schedule.

Amendments

^{F274}2

Textual Amendments
F274 Sch. 6 para. 2 repealed (1.5.1995 with effect in accordance with Sch. 8 para. 57 of the amending Act) by 1995 c. 4, s. 162, Sch. 29 Pt. VIII(5), note 2

3 (1) Section 590 (conditions for approval of schemes) shall be amended as follows.

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (2) In subsection (3)(d) (condition to be satisfied as to lump sum) the words “(disregarding any excess of that remuneration over the permitted maximum)” shall be omitted.
- (3) In subsection (3) for the words from “In paragraph (d) above” to the end there shall be substituted—
- “(e) that, in the case of any employee who is a member of the scheme by virtue of two or more relevant associated employments, the amount payable by way of pension in respect of service in any one of them may not, when aggregated with any amount payable by way of pension in respect of service in the other or others, exceed the relevant amount;
 - (f) that, in the case of any employee who is a member of the scheme by virtue of two or more relevant associated employments, the amount payable by way of commuted pension in respect of service in any one of them may not, when aggregated with any amount payable by way of commuted pension in respect of service in the other or others, exceed the relevant amount;
 - (g) that, in the case of any employee in relation to whom the scheme is connected with another scheme which is (or other schemes each of which is) an approved scheme, the amount payable by way of pension under the scheme may not, when aggregated with any amount payable by way of pension under the other scheme or schemes, exceed the relevant amount;
 - (h) that, in the case of any employee in relation to whom the scheme is connected with another scheme which is (or other schemes each of which is) an approved scheme, the amount payable by way of commuted pension may not, when aggregated with any amount payable by way of commuted pension under the other scheme or schemes, exceed the relevant amount.”
- (4) For subsection (7) there shall be substituted—
- “(7) Subsections (8) to (10) below apply where the Board are considering whether a retirement benefits scheme satisfies or continues to satisfy the prescribed conditions.
- (8) For the purpose of determining whether the scheme, so far as it relates to a particular class or description of employees, satisfies or continues to satisfy the prescribed conditions, that scheme shall be considered in conjunction with—
- (a) any other retirement benefits scheme (or schemes) which relates (or relate) to employees of that class or description and which is (or are) approved for the purposes of this Chapter,
 - (b) any other retirement benefits scheme (or schemes) which relates (or relate) to employees of that class or description and which is (or are) at the same time before the Board in order for them to decide whether to give approval for the purposes of this Chapter,
 - (c) any section 608 scheme or schemes relating to employees of that class or description, and
 - (d) any relevant statutory scheme or schemes relating to employees of that class or description.

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (9) If those conditions are satisfied in the case of both or all of those schemes taken together, they shall be taken to be satisfied in the case of the scheme mentioned in subsection (7) above (as well as the other or others).
- (10) If those conditions are not satisfied in the case of both or all of those schemes taken together, they shall not be taken to be satisfied in the case of the scheme mentioned in subsection (7) above.
- (11) The reference in subsection (8)(c) above to a section 608 scheme is a reference to a fund to which section 608 applies.”

4 The following sections shall be inserted after section 590—

“590A Section 590: supplementary provisions.

- (1) For the purposes of section 590(3)(e) and (f) two or more employments are relevant associated employments if they are employments in the case of which—
- (a) there is a period during which the employee has held both or all of them,
 - (b) the period counts under the scheme in the case of both or all of them as a period in respect of which benefits are payable, and
 - (c) the period is one during which both or all of the employers in question are associated.
- (2) For the purposes of section 590(3)(g) and (h) the scheme is connected with another scheme in relation to an employee if—
- (a) there is a period during which he has been the employee of two persons who are associated employers,
 - (b) the period counts under both schemes as a period in respect of which benefits are payable, and
 - (c) the period counts under one scheme by virtue of service with one employer and under the other scheme by virtue of service with the other employer.
- (3) For the purposes of subsections (1) and (2) above, employers are associated if (directly or indirectly) one is controlled by the other or if both are controlled by a third person.
- (4) In subsection (3) above the reference to control, in relation to a body corporate, shall be construed—
- (a) where the body corporate is a close company, in accordance with section 416, and
 - (b) where it is not, in accordance with section 840.

590B Section 590: further supplementary provisions.

- (1) For the purposes of section 590(3)(e) the relevant amount, in relation to an employee, shall be found by applying the following formula—

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

$$\frac{A \times C}{60}$$

- (2) For the purposes of section 590(3)(f) the relevant amount, in relation to an employee, shall be found by applying the following formula—

$$\frac{3 \times A \times C}{80}$$

- (3) For the purposes of section 590(3)(g) the relevant amount, in relation to an employee, shall be found by applying the following formula—

$$\frac{B \times C}{60}$$

- (4) For the purposes of section 590(3)(h) the relevant amount, in relation to an employee, shall be found by applying the following formula—

$$\frac{3 \times B \times C}{80}$$

- (5) For the purposes of this section A is the aggregate number of years service (expressing parts of a year as a fraction), subject to a maximum of 40, which, in the case of the employee, count for the purposes of the scheme at the time the benefits in respect of service in the employment become payable.
- (6) But where the same year (or part of a year) counts for the purposes of this scheme by virtue of more than one of the relevant associated employments it shall be counted only once in calculating the aggregate number of years service for the purposes of subsection (5) above.
- (7) For the purposes of this section B is the aggregate number of years service (expressing parts of a year as a fraction), subject to a maximum of 40, which, in the case of the employee, count for the purposes of any of the following—
- the scheme, and
 - the other scheme or schemes with which the scheme is connected in relation to him,
- at the time the benefits become payable.
- (8) But where the same year (or part of a year) counts for the purposes of more than one scheme it shall be counted only once in calculating the aggregate number of years service for the purpose of subsection (7) above.
- (9) For the purposes of this section C is the permitted maximum in relation to the year of assessment in which the benefits in question become payable, that is, the figure found for that year by virtue of subsections (10) and (11) below.
- (10) For the years 1988-89 and 1989-90 the figure is £60,000.

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (11) For any subsequent year of assessment the figure is the figure found for that year, for the purposes of section 590C, by virtue of section 590C(4) and(5).

590C Earnings cap.

- (1) In arriving at an employee’s final remuneration for the purposes of section 590(3)(a) or (d), any excess of what would be his final remuneration (apart from this section) over the permitted maximum for the year of assessment in which his participation in the scheme ceases shall be disregarded.
- (2) In subsection (1) above “the permitted maximum”, in relation to a year of assessment, means the figure found for that year by virtue of subsections (3) and (4) below.
- (3) For the years 1988-89 and 1989-90 the figure is £60,000.
- (4) For any subsequent year of assessment the figure is also £60,000, subject to subsection (5) below.
- (5) If the retail prices index for the month of December preceding a year of assessment falling within subsection (4) above is higher than it was for the previous December, the figure for that year shall be an amount arrived at by—
- (a) increasing the figure for the previous year of assessment by the same percentage as the percentage increase in the retail prices index, and
 - (b) if the result is not a multiple of £600, rounding it up to the nearest amount which is such a multiple.
- (6) The Treasury shall in the year of assessment 1989-90, and in each subsequent year of assessment, make an order specifying the figure which is by virtue of this section the figure for the following year of assessment.”

- 5 (1) Section 592 (exempt approved schemes) shall be amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (8) there shall be inserted at the beginning the words “Subject to subsection (8A) below,”.
- (3) After subsection (8) there shall be inserted—
- “(8A) Where an employee’s remuneration for a year of assessment includes remuneration in respect of more than one employment, the amount allowed to be deducted by virtue of subsection (7) above in respect of contributions paid by the employee in that year by virtue of any employment (whether under a single scheme or under two or more schemes) shall not exceed 15 per cent, or such higher percentage as the Board may in a particular case prescribe, of his remuneration for the year in respect of that employment.”
- (4) After subsection (8A) there shall be inserted—
- “(8B) In arriving at an employee’s remuneration for a year of assessment for the purposes of subsection (8) or (8A) above, any excess of what would be his remuneration (apart from this subsection) over the permitted maximum for that year shall be disregarded.

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (8C) In subsection (8B) above “permitted maximum”, in relation to a year of assessment, means the figure found for that year by virtue of subsections (8D) and (8E) below.
- (8D) For the year 1989-90 the figure is £60,000.
- (8E) For any subsequent year of assessment the figure is the figure found for that year, for the purposes of section 590C, by virtue of section 590C(4) and (5).”
- 6 (1) Section 594 (exempt statutory schemes) shall be amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (1) the word “relevant” shall be inserted before the words “statutory scheme”.
- (3) In subsection (2) there shall be inserted at the beginning the words “Subject to subsection (3) below,”.
- (4) After subsection (2) there shall be inserted—
- “(3) Where a person’s remuneration for a year of assessment includes remuneration in respect of more than one office or employment, the amount allowed to be deducted by virtue of subsection (1) above in respect of contributions paid by the person in that year by virtue of any office or employment (whether under a single scheme or under two or more schemes) shall not exceed 15 per cent, or such higher percentage as the Board may in a particular case prescribe, of his remuneration for the year in respect of that office or employment.”
- (5) After subsection (3) there shall be inserted—
- “(4) In arriving at a person’s remuneration for a year of assessment for the purposes of subsection (2) or (3) above, any excess of what would be his remuneration (apart from this subsection) over the permitted maximum for that year shall be disregarded.
- (5) In subsection (4) above “permitted maximum”, in relation to a year of assessment, means the figure found for that year by virtue of subsections (6) and (7) below.
- (6) For the year 1989-90 the figure is £60,000.
- (7) For any subsequent year of assessment the figure is the figure found for that year, for the purposes of section 590C, by virtue of section 590C(4) and (5).”
- 7 Section 595(2) and (3) (charge to tax in certain cases) shall be omitted.
- 8 (1) Section 596 (exceptions from section 595) shall be amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (1)—
- (a) for the words “Neither subsection (1) nor subsection (2) of section 595 shall” there shall be substituted the words “Section 595(1) shall not”; and
- (b) in paragraph (b) the word “relevant” shall be inserted before the words “statutory scheme”.
- (3) In subsection (2) for the words “Neither subsection (1) nor subsection (2) of section 595 shall” there shall be substituted the words “Section 595(1) shall not”.
- (4) In subsection (3)(a) the words “either” and “or subsection (2)” shall be omitted.

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

9 The following section shall be inserted after section 596—

“596A Charge to tax: benefits under non-approved schemes.

- (1) Where in any year of assessment a person receives a benefit provided under a retirement benefits scheme which is not of a description mentioned in section 596(1) (a), (b) or (c), tax shall be charged in accordance with the provisions of this section.
- (2) Where the benefit is received by an individual, he shall be charged to tax under Schedule E for that year.
- (3) Where the benefit is received by a person other than an individual, the administrator of the scheme shall be charged to tax under Case VI of Schedule D for that year.
- (4) The amount to be charged to tax is—
 - (a) in the case of a cash benefit, the amount received, and
 - (b) in the case of a benefit in kind, an amount equal to whatever is the cash equivalent of the benefit.
- (5) In the case of the charge under Case VI of Schedule D, the rate of tax is 40 per cent. or such other rate (whether higher or lower) as may for the time being be specified by the Treasury by order.
- (6) Tax shall not be charged under this section in the case of a benefit which is chargeable to tax under Schedule E by virtue of section 19(1).
- (7) But where the amount chargeable to tax by virtue of section 19(1) is less than the amount which would be chargeable to tax under this section—
 - (a) subsection (6) above shall not apply, and
 - (b) the amount chargeable to tax under this section shall be reduced by the amount chargeable to tax by virtue of section 19(1).
- (8) Tax shall not be charged under this section to the extent that the benefit received is attributable to the payment of a sum—
 - (a) which is deemed to be the income of a person by virtue of section 595(1), and
 - (b) in respect of which that person has been assessed to tax.
- (9) For the purpose of subsection (8) above the provision of a benefit shall be presumed not to be attributable to the payment of such a sum as is mentioned in that subsection unless the contrary is shown.

596B Section 596A: supplementary provisions.

- (1) For the purposes of section 596A the cash equivalent of a benefit in kind is—
 - (a) in the case of a benefit other than living accommodation, the amount which would be the cash equivalent of the benefit under Chapter II of Part V if it were chargeable under the appropriate provision of that Chapter (treating any sum made good by the recipient as made good by the employee), and
 - (b) in the case of living accommodation, an amount equal to the value of the accommodation to the recipient determined in accordance

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

with the following provisions of this section less so much of any sum made good by him to those at whose cost the accommodation is provided as is properly attributable to the provision of the accommodation.

- (2) Where the cost of providing the accommodation does not exceed £75,000, the value of the accommodation to the recipient in any period is the rent which would have been payable for the period if the premises had been let to him at an annual rent equal to their annual value as ascertained under section 837.
- (3) But for a period in which those at whose cost the accommodation is provided pay rent at an annual rate greater than the annual value as so ascertained, the value of the accommodation to the recipient is an amount equal to the rent payable by them for the period.
- (4) Where the cost of providing the accommodation does exceed £75,000, the value of the accommodation to the recipient shall be taken to be the aggregate of the value of the accommodation to him determined in accordance with subsections (2) and (3) above and the additional value of the accommodation to him determined in accordance with subsections (5) and (6) below.
- (5) The additional value of the accommodation to the recipient in any period is the rent which would have been payable for that period if the premises had been let to him at an annual rent equal to the appropriate percentage of the amount by which the cost of providing the accommodation exceeds £75,000.
- (6) Where throughout the period of six years ending with the date when the recipient first occupied the property any estate or interest in the property was held by a relevant person (whether or not it was the same estate, interest or person throughout), the additional value shall be calculated as if in subsection (7) below—
 - (a) the amount referred to in paragraph (a) were the market value of that property as at that date, and
 - (b) the amount referred to in paragraph (b) did not include expenditure on improvements made before that date.
- (7) For the purposes of this section, the cost of providing any living accommodation shall be taken to be the aggregate of—
 - (a) the amount of any expenditure incurred in acquiring the estate or interest in the property held by a relevant person, and
 - (b) the amount of any expenditure incurred by a relevant person before the year of assessment in question on improvements to the property.
- (8) The aggregate amount mentioned in subsection (7) above shall be reduced by the amount of any payment made by the recipient to a relevant person, so far as that amount represents a reimbursement of any such expenditure as is mentioned in paragraph (a) or (b) of that subsection or represents consideration for the grant to the recipient of a tenancy of the property.
- (9) For the purposes of this section, any of the following persons is a relevant person—
 - (a) the person providing the accommodation;

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (b) any person, other than the recipient, who is connected with a person falling within paragraph (a) above.

(10) In this section—

“the appropriate percentage” means the rate applicable for the purposes of section 160 as at the beginning of the year of assessment in question;

“market value”, in relation to any property, means the price which that property might reasonably be expected to fetch on a sale in the open market with vacant possession, no reduction being made, in estimating the market value, on account of any option in respect of the property held by the recipient, or a person connected with him, or by any of the persons mentioned in subsection (9) above;

“property”, in relation to any living accommodation, means the property consisting of that living accommodation;

“tenancy” includes a sub-tenancy;

and section 839 shall apply for the purposes of this section.”

10 In section 598(1)(b) (charge to tax: repayment of employee’s contributions) the word “relevant” shall be inserted before the words “statutory scheme”.

11 (1) Section 599 (charge to tax: commutation of entire pension in special circumstances) shall be amended as follows.

(2) In subsection (2)(b) the word “relevant” shall be inserted before the words “statutory scheme”.

(3) After subsection (9) there shall be inserted—

“(10) In subsection (1)(a) above “the permitted maximum” means, as regards a charge to tax arising under this section in a particular year of assessment, the figure found for that year by virtue of subsections (11) and (12) below.

(11) For the years 1988-89 and 1989-90 the figure is £60,000.

(12) For any subsequent year of assessment the figure is the figure found for that year, for the purposes of section 590C, by virtue of section 590C(4) and (5).”

12 (1) The following section shall be inserted after section 599—

“599A Charge to tax: payments out of surplus funds.

(1) This subsection applies to any payment which is made to or for the benefit of an employee or to his personal representatives out of funds which are or have been held for the purposes of—

(a) a scheme which is or has at any time been an exempt approved scheme, or

(b) a relevant statutory scheme established under a public general Act, and which is made in pursuance of a duty to return surplus funds.

(2) On the making of a payment to which subsection (1) above applies, the administrator of the scheme shall be charged to income tax under Case VI of Schedule D at the relevant rate on such amount as, after deduction of tax at that rate, would equal the amount of the payment.

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (3) Subject to subsection (4) below, the relevant rate shall be 35 per cent.
 - (4) The Treasury may by order from time to time increase or decrease therelevant rate.
 - (5) Where a payment made to or for the benefit of an employee is one to which subsection (1) above applies, it shall be treated in computing the total income of the employee for the year in which it is made as income for that year which is—
 - (a) received by him after deduction of income tax at the basic rate from a corresponding gross amount, and
 - (b) chargeable to income tax under Case VI of Schedule D.
 - (6) But, subject to subsection (7) below, no assessment to income tax shall be made on, and no repayment of income tax shall be made to, the employee.
 - (7) Subsection (6) above shall not prevent an assessment in respect of income tax at a rate other than the basic rate.
 - (8) Subsection (5) above applies whether or not the employee is the recipient of the payment.
 - (9) Any payment chargeable to tax under this section shall not be chargeable to tax under section 598, 599 or 600 or under the Regulations mentioned in paragraph 8 of Schedule 3 to the Finance Act 1971.
 - (10) In this section—
 - “employee”, in relation to a relevant statutory scheme, includes any officer;
 - references to any payment include references to any transfer of assets or other transfer of money’s worth.”
- 13 (1) Section 600 (charge to tax: unauthorised payments to or for employees) shall be amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (1) the words “or have been” and “or has at any time been” shall be omitted.
 - (3) In subsection (2) for paragraphs (a) and (b) there shall be substituted the words “is not expressly authorised by the rules of the scheme or by virtue of paragraph 33 of Schedule 6 to the Finance Act 1989.”
- 14 In section 605 (information) the word “relevant” shall be inserted before the words “statutory scheme” in subsections (2), (3)(a) and (b)(i) and (4).
- 15 The following section shall be inserted after section 611—

“611A Definition of relevant statutory scheme.

- (1) In this Chapter any reference to a relevant statutory scheme is a reference to a statutory scheme—
 - (a) established before 14th March 1989, or
 - (b) established on or after that date and entered in the register maintained by the Board for the purposes of this section.

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (2) The Board shall maintain a register for the purposes of this section and shall enter in it the relevant particulars of any statutory scheme established on or after 14th March 1989 which is reported to the Board by the authority responsible for establishing it as a scheme the provisions of which correspond with those of an approved scheme.
- (3) The reference in subsection (2) above to the relevant particulars, in relation to a scheme, is a reference to—
- (a) the identity of the scheme,
 - (b) the date on which it was established,
 - (c) the authority responsible for establishing it, and
 - (d) the date on which that authority reported the scheme to the Board.
- (4) Where the Board enter the relevant particulars of a scheme in the register maintained by them for the purposes of this section, they shall inform the authority responsible for establishing the scheme of the date of the entry.”

16 In section 828(4) (orders) after “377(8)” there shall be inserted “590C(6)”.

17 Paragraph 8 of Schedule 23 (benefits under scheme for additional voluntary contributions causing benefits under main scheme to abate if aggregate benefits exceed limits) shall be omitted.

Effect of amendments

- 18 (1) Paragraphs 2, 6(2), 8(2)(b), 10, 11(2), 14 and 15 above shall be deemed to have come into force on 14th March 1989.
- (2) Paragraphs 3(2) and (3) and 4 above shall have effect in relation to a scheme not approved by the Board before the day on which this Act is passed; but if the scheme came into existence before 14th March 1989 those provisions shall not have effect as regards an employee who became a member of the scheme before 1st June 1989.
- (3) Paragraph 3(4) above shall have effect where a determination is made on or after the day on which this Act is passed.
- (4) Paragraphs 5 and 6(3), (4) and (5) above shall have effect for the year 1989-90 and subsequent years of assessment, but paragraphs 5(4) and 6(5) above shall not have effect as regards a person’s remuneration in respect of an office or employment in such circumstances as the Board may by regulations prescribe for the purposes of this sub-paragraph.
- (5) Paragraphs 7 and 8(2)(a) and (3) above shall have effect for the year 1988-89 and subsequent years of assessment.
- (6) Paragraph 8(4) above shall not have effect where a sum has been deemed to be income of a person by virtue of section 595(2) before 6th April 1988.
- (7) Paragraph 9 above shall have effect in relation to payments made and benefits provided on or after the day on which this Act is passed.
- (8) Paragraph 11(3) above shall have effect where the charge to tax under section 599 arises on or after 14th March 1989, but not where the scheme came into existence before that date and the employee became a member of it before 1st June 1989.

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (9) Paragraphs 12 and 13 above shall have effect in relation to payments made on or after the day on which this Act is passed.
- (10) Paragraph 17 above shall have effect in relation to benefits provided on or after the day on which this Act is passed.

Modifications etc. (not altering text)

C65 For regulations see Part III Vol. 5 (under “Retirement benefit schemes: tax relief on contributions”)

PART II U.K.

APPROVED SCHEMES: GENERAL

Preliminary

- 19 (1) This Part of this Schedule shall be deemed to have come into force on 14th March 1989 and, subject to sub-paragraphs (2) to (4) below, applies in relation to any retirement benefits scheme (within the meaning of Chapter I of Part XIV of the Taxes Act 1988) approved by the Board before the day on which this Act is passed.
- (2) The Board may by regulations provide that, in circumstances prescribed in the regulations, this Part of this Schedule or any provision of it shall not apply or shall apply with such modifications as may be so prescribed.
- (3) Regulations under sub-paragraph (2) above—
- (a) may include provision authorising the Board to direct that this Part of this Schedule or any provision of it shall not apply in any particular case where in the opinion of the Board the facts are such that its application would not be appropriate;
 - (b) may take effect (and may authorise any direction given under them to take effect) as from 14th March 1989 or any later date;
 - (c) may make such supplementary provision as appears to the Board to be necessary or expedient.
- (4) This Part of this Schedule shall not apply to a scheme if, before the end of 1989, the administrator of the scheme gives written notice to the Board that it is not to apply.
- (5) Where a notice is given to the Board under sub-paragraph (4) above, the scheme shall cease to be approved—
- (a) if it came into existence before 14th March 1989, with effect from 1st June 1989 or (if later) the date with effect from which it was approved;
 - (b) if it came into existence on or after 14th March 1989, with effect from the date with effect from which it was approved.

Modifications etc. (not altering text)

C66 For regulations see Part III Vol. 5 (under “Retirement benefit schemes: tax relief on contributions”)

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

Remuneration

- 20 (1) This paragraph applies—
- (a) where the scheme came into existence before 14th March 1989, as regards an employee who became a member of the scheme on or after 1st June 1989;
 - (b) where the scheme came into existence on or after 14th March 1989, as regards any employee who is a member of the scheme (whenever he became a member).
- (2) The rules of the scheme shall have effect (notwithstanding anything in them to the contrary and notwithstanding the effect of anything in Schedule 23 to the Taxes Act 1988) as if, in arriving at the employee's relevant annual remuneration for the purposes of calculating benefits, any excess of what would be his relevant annual remuneration (apart from this paragraph) over the permitted maximum for the year of assessment in which his participation in the scheme ceases shall be disregarded.
- (3) The rules of the scheme shall have effect (notwithstanding anything in them to the contrary) as if, in arriving at the employee's remuneration for the year 1988-89 or any subsequent year of assessment for the purposes of any restriction on the aggregate amount of contributions payable under the scheme by the employee and the employer, there were disregarded any excess of what would be his remuneration for the year (apart from this paragraph) over the permitted maximum for the year.
- (4) In this paragraph "the permitted maximum", in relation to a year of assessment, means the figure found for that year by virtue of sub-paragraphs (5) and (6) below.
- (5) For the years 1988-89 and 1989-90 the figure is £60,000.
- (6) For any subsequent year of assessment the figure is the figure found for that year, for the purposes of section 590C of the Taxes Act 1988, by virtue of section 590C(4) and (5).

Modifications etc. (not altering text)

C67 See The Retirement Benefits Schemes (Continuation of Rights of Members of Approved Schemes) Regs. 1990 (S.I.1990/2101—in Part III Vol. 5) for circumstances when para. 20 is disapplied or modified; when para. 21 is modified; or when para. 22 is disapplied

- 21 (1) The rules of the scheme shall have effect (notwithstanding anything in them to the contrary) as if the amount of contributions payable under the scheme by an employee in the year 1989-90 or any subsequent year of assessment were limited to 15 per cent. of his remuneration for the year in respect of the employment.
- (2) Where in relation to any year of assessment a percentage higher than 15 per cent. applies for the purposes of section 592(8) or (8A) of the Taxes Act 1988 (relief in respect of contributions) as regards any employee, sub-paragraph (1) above, as regards him, shall have effect in relation to that year with the substitution for 15 per cent. of that higher percentage.

Modifications etc. (not altering text)

C68 See The Retirement Benefits Schemes (Continuation of Rights of Members of Approved Schemes) Regs. 1990 (S.I.1990/2101—in Part III Vol. 5) for circumstances when para. 20 is disapplied or modified; when para. 21 is modified; or when para. 22 is disapplied

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- 22 (1) This paragraph applies—
- (a) where the scheme came into existence before 14th March 1989, as regards an employee who became a member of the scheme on or after 1st June 1989;
 - (b) where the scheme came into existence on or after 14th March 1989, as regards any employee who is a member of the scheme (whenever he became a member).
- (2) For the purposes of paragraph 21(1) above, in arriving at the employee's remuneration for the year any excess of what would be his remuneration for the year (apart from this sub-paragraph) over the permitted maximum for the year shall be disregarded.
- (3) In sub-paragraph (2) above "the permitted maximum", in relation to a year of assessment, means the figure found for that year by virtue of sub-paragraphs (4) and (5) below.
- (4) For the year 1989-90 the figure is £60,000.
- (5) For any subsequent year of assessment the figure is the figure found for that year, for the purposes of section 590C of the Taxes Act 1988, by virtue of section 590C(4) and (5).

Modifications etc. (not altering text)

C69 See The Retirement Benefits Schemes (Continuation of Rights of Members of Approved Schemes) Regs. 1990 (S.I.1990/2101—in Part III Vol. 5) for circumstances when para. 20 is disapplied or modified; when para. 21 is modified; or when para. 22 is disapplied

Accelerated accrual

- 23 (1) This paragraph applies where the scheme allows a member to commute his pension or part of it for a lump sum or sums and—
- (a) where the scheme came into existence before 14th March 1989, applies as regards an employee who became a member of the scheme on or after 1st June 1989, and
 - (b) where the scheme came into existence on or after 14th March 1989, applies as regards any employee who is a member of the scheme (whenever he became a member).
- (2) The rules of the scheme shall have effect (notwithstanding anything in them to the contrary and notwithstanding the effect of paragraph 3 of Schedule 23 to the Taxes Act 1988) as if they did not allow the employee to obtain by way of commutation a lump sum or sums exceeding in all the greater of the following sums—
- (a) a sum of three-eighths of his relevant annual remuneration for each year of service up to a maximum of 40;
 - (b) a sum of the pension payable under the scheme to the employee for the first year in which it is payable multiplied by 2.25.
- (3) The following rules shall apply in calculating, for the purposes of sub-paragraph (2) above, the pension payable under the scheme to the employee for the first year in which it is payable—
- (a) if the pension payable for the year changes, the initial pension payable shall be taken;
 - (b) it shall be assumed that the employee will survive for the year;

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (c) the effect of commutation, and of any allocation of pension to provide benefits for survivors, shall be ignored.

Modifications etc. (not altering text)

C70 See The Retirement Benefits Schemes (Continuation of Rights of Members of Approved Schemes) Regs. 1990 (S.I.1990/2101—in Part III Vol. 5) for circumstances when para. 23 is disapplied or modified

- 24 (1) This paragraph applies where the scheme provides a lump sum or sums for a member otherwise than by commutation of his pension or part of it and—
- (a) where the scheme came into existence before 14th March 1989, applies as regards an employee who became a member of the scheme on or after 1st June 1989, and
 - (b) where the scheme came into existence on or after 14th March 1989, applies as regards any employee who is a member of the scheme (whenever he became a member).
- (2) The rules of the scheme shall have effect (notwithstanding anything in them to the contrary and notwithstanding the effect of paragraph 4 of Schedule 23 to the Taxes Act 1988) as if they did not allow the payment to the employee, otherwise than by way of commutation, of a lump sum or sum exceeding in all the greater of the following sums—
- (a) a sum of three-eighths of his relevant annual remuneration for each year of service up to a maximum of 40;
 - (b) a sum of the relevant number of eighths of his relevant annual remuneration.
- (3) For the purposes of sub-paragraph (2) above the relevant number shall be found by taking the number of eighths (of relevant annual remuneration) by reference to which the pension payable under the scheme to the employee is calculated, multiplying that number by three, and treating the resulting number as 120 if it would otherwise exceed 120.

Modifications etc. (not altering text)

C71 See The Retirement Benefits Schemes (Continuation of Rights of Members of Approved Schemes) Regs. 1990 (S.I.1990/2101—in Part III Vol. 5) for circumstances when para. 24 is disapplied

Associated employments

- 25 (1) This paragraph applies—
- (a) where the scheme came into existence before 14th March 1989, as regards an employee who became a member of the scheme on or after 1st June 1989;
 - (b) where the scheme came into existence on or after 14th March 1989, as regards any employee who is a member of the scheme (whenever he became a member).
- (2) Where the employee is a member of the scheme by virtue of two or more relevant associated employments, the rules of the scheme shall have effect as mentioned in sub-paragraph (3) below.

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (3) The rules of the scheme shall have effect (notwithstanding anything in them to the contrary) as if they prohibited the amount payable by way of pension in respect of service in any of the relevant associated employments, when aggregated with any amount payable by way of pension in respect of service in the other such employment or employments, from exceeding the relevant amount.
- (4) For the purposes of sub-paragraph (3) above the relevant amount, in relation to the employee, shall be found by applying the following formula—

$$\frac{A \times C}{30}$$

- (5) For the purposes of this paragraph—
- (a) section 590B(5) and (6) of the Taxes Act 1988 shall apply for the purpose of defining A, and
- (b) section 590B(9) to (11) of that Act shall apply for the purpose of defining C, as they apply for the purposes of section 590B of that Act, except that for the purposes of this paragraph A shall not exceed 20.
- (6) The reference to two or more relevant associated employments shall be construed in accordance with section 590A of the Taxes Act 1988.

Modifications etc. (not altering text)

C72 See The Retirement Benefits Schemes (Continuation of Rights of Members of Approved Schemes) Regs. 1990 (S.I.1990/2101—in Part III Vol. 5) for circumstances when paras. 25 or 26 disapply

Connected schemes

- 26 (1) This paragraph applies—
- (a) where the scheme came into existence before 14th March 1989, as regards an employee who became a member of the scheme on or after 1st June 1989;
- (b) where the scheme came into existence on or after 14th March 1989, as regards any employee who is a member of the scheme (whenever he became a member).
- (2) Where in relation to the employee the scheme is connected with another scheme which is (or other schemes each of which is) an approved scheme, the rules of the scheme shall have effect as mentioned in sub-paragraph (3) below.
- (3) The rules of the scheme shall have effect (notwithstanding anything in them to the contrary) as if they prohibited the amount payable by way of pension under the scheme, when aggregated with any amount payable by way of pension under the other scheme or schemes, from exceeding the relevant amount.
- (4) For the purposes of sub-paragraph (3) above the relevant amount, in relation to the employee, shall be found by applying the following formula—

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

$$\frac{B \times C}{30}$$

- (5) For the purposes of this paragraph—
- (a) section 590B(7) and (8) of the Taxes Act 1988 shall apply for the purpose of defining B, and
 - (b) section 590B(9) to (11) of that Act shall apply for the purpose of defining C, as they apply for the purposes of section 590B of that Act, except that for the purposes of this paragraph B shall not exceed 20.
- (6) References in this paragraph to the scheme being connected with another scheme in relation to the employee shall be construed in accordance with section 590A of the Taxes Act 1988.

Modifications etc. (not altering text)

C73 See The Retirement Benefits Schemes (Continuation of Rights of Members of Approved Schemes) Regs. 1990 (S.I.1990/2101—in Part III Vol. 5) for circumstances when paras. 25 or 26 disapply

Augmentation

- 27 (1) This paragraph applies—
- (a) where the scheme came into existence before 14th March 1989, as regards an employee who became a member of the scheme on or after 1st June 1989;
 - (b) where the scheme came into existence on or after 14th March 1989, as regards any employee who is a member of the scheme (whenever he became a member).
- (2) Where in addition to being a member of the scheme (the main scheme) the employee is also a member of an approved scheme (the voluntary scheme) which provides additional benefits to supplement those provided by the main scheme and to which no contributions are made by any employer of his, sub-paragraph (3) below shall apply in relation to any augmentation of the benefits provided for him by the main scheme after he has ceased to participate in it.
- (3) Any rules of the main scheme imposing a limit on the amount of a benefit provided for the employee shall have effect (notwithstanding anything in them to the contrary) as if they provided for the limit to be reduced by the amount of any like benefit provided for the employee by the voluntary scheme.

Centralised schemes

- 28 (1) Where the scheme is a centralised scheme, sub-paragraph (1)(a) and (b) of each of paragraphs 20 and 22 to 27 above shall have effect with the substitution for the reference to the coming into existence of the scheme of a reference to the commencement of the employer's participation in the scheme.
- (2) For the purposes of this paragraph a centralised scheme is a retirement benefits scheme (within the meaning of Chapter I of Part XIV of the Taxes Act 1988) established for the purpose of enabling any employer, other than an employer

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

associated with the person by whom the scheme is established, to participate in it as regards his employees.

- (3) For the purposes of sub-paragraph (2) above one person is associated with another if (directly or indirectly) one is controlled by the other or if both are controlled by a third person.
- (4) In sub-paragraph (3) above the reference to control, in relation to a body corporate, shall be construed—
 - (a) where the body corporate is a close company, in accordance with section 416 of the Taxes Act 1988, and
 - (b) where it is not, in accordance with section 840 of that Act.

Election

- 29 (1) In a case where—
 - (a) an employee became a member of the scheme on or after 17th March 1987 and before 1st June 1989, and
 - (b) he gives written notice to the administrator of the scheme that this Part of this Schedule is to apply in his case,he shall be deemed for the purposes of this Part of this Schedule to have become a member of the scheme on 1st June 1989.
- (2) A notice under this paragraph shall be given in such form as the Board may prescribe.

Supplementary

- 30 In this Part of this Schedule “relevant annual remuneration” means final remuneration or, if the scheme provides for benefits to be calculated by reference to some other annual remuneration, that other annual remuneration.

PART III U.K.

APPROVED SCHEMES: ADDITIONAL VOLUNTARY CONTRIBUTIONS

Preliminary

- 31 (1) Subject to sub-paragraphs (2) to (4) below, this Part of this Schedule applies in relation to any retirement benefits scheme which was approved by the Board before the day on which this Act is passed and which makes provision for the payment by an employee of voluntary contributions.
- (2) Paragraph 32 below only applies where—
 - (a) the provision for the payment of voluntary contributions is freestanding, and
 - (b) the scheme is not one to which contributions are made by any employer of the employee.
- (3) The Board may by regulations provide that, in circumstances prescribed in the regulations, this Part of this Schedule or any provision of it shall not apply or shall apply with such modifications as may be so prescribed.
- (4) Regulations under sub-paragraph (3) above—

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) may include provision authorising the Board to direct that this Part of this Schedule or any provision of it shall not apply in any particular case where in the opinion of the Board the facts are such that its application would not be appropriate;
- (b) may make such supplementary provision as appears to the Board to be necessary or expedient.

Abatement of benefits

- 32 (1) The scheme shall have effect (notwithstanding anything in it to the contrary) as if its rules included a rule imposing, in the case of each benefit provided for the employee, such a limit on the amount of the benefit as is mentioned in sub-paragraph (2) below.
- (2) The limit referred to above is a limit of such an amount as is found by—
- (a) taking the amount of the limit imposed by the main scheme on the provision of any like benefit for the employee by that scheme, and
 - (b) subtracting from that amount an amount equal to the relevant amount.
- (3) For the purposes of sub-paragraph (2) above the relevant amount is—
- (a) where the employee is not a member of any other relevant scheme, the amount of any like benefit provided for the employee by the main scheme, and
 - (b) where the employee is a member of another relevant scheme or schemes, an amount equal to the aggregate of the amount mentioned in paragraph (a) above and the amount of any like benefit provided for the employee by the other relevant scheme or schemes.
- (4) In sub-paragraph (3) above, references to the employee being a member of another relevant scheme are references to his being a member of any approved scheme, other than the scheme, which provides additional benefits for him to supplement those provided by the main scheme.
- (5) This paragraph shall have effect in relation to benefits provided on or after the day on which this Act is passed.

Return of surplus funds

- 33 (1) The scheme shall have effect (notwithstanding anything in it to the contrary) as if its rules included a rule requiring the administrator, in the circumstances mentioned in sub-paragraph (2) or (3) below, as the case may be, to make to the employee or his personal representatives a payment of an amount equal to the prescribed amount out of funds which are or have been held for the purposes of the scheme.
- (2) Where the provision for the payment of voluntary contributions is freestanding, the circumstances referred to above are that the amount of any benefit provided for the employee by the scheme would have been greater had the amount of any like benefit provided for him by the main scheme, or any other relevant scheme of which he is a member, been less.
- (3) Where the provision for the payment of voluntary contributions is not freestanding, the circumstances referred to above are that the amount of any benefit provided for the employee by virtue of the voluntary contributions would have been greater had the amount of any like benefit provided for him by the principal provisions of the scheme, or any other relevant scheme of which he is a member, been less.

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (4) In sub-paragraph (1) above, the reference to the prescribed amount is to an amount calculated in accordance with the method for the time being specified in regulations made for the purposes of section 591 of the Taxes Act 1988 as the method to be used for calculating the amount of any surplus funds.
- (5) In sub-paragraph (2) above, the reference to the employee being a member of another relevant scheme is a reference to his being a member of any approved scheme, other than the scheme, which provides additional benefits for him to supplement those provided by the main scheme.
- (6) In sub-paragraph (3) above, the reference to the employee being a member of another relevant scheme is a reference to his being a member of any approved scheme, other than the scheme, which provides additional benefits for him to supplement those provided by the principal provisions of the scheme.
- 34 The scheme shall have effect (notwithstanding anything in it to the contrary) as if its rules included a rule enabling the administrator, before making any payment by virtue of paragraph 33 above, to deduct the amount of any tax to which he is charged by section 599A of the Taxes Act 1988 by virtue of making the payment.

Supplementary

- 35 In this Part of this Schedule—
- (a) “administrator”, “approved scheme”, “employee” and “retirement benefits scheme” have the same meanings as in Chapter I of Part XIV of the Taxes Act 1988,
 - (b) “freestanding”, in relation to provision for the payment of voluntary contributions, means provision which is contained in a retirement benefits scheme other than the one which provides the benefits which the voluntary contributions are intended to supplement,
 - (c) “the main scheme”, in relation to provision for the payment of voluntary contributions which is freestanding, means the retirement benefits scheme which provides the benefits which the voluntary contributions are intended to supplement,
 - (d) “principal provisions”, in relation to a retirement benefits scheme which makes provision for the payment of voluntary contributions which is not freestanding, means the provisions of the scheme concerning the provision of the benefits which the voluntary contributions are intended to supplement,
 - (e) references to the provision of a benefit for an employee shall, in relation to a deceased employee, be construed as references to the provision of a benefit in respect of him, and
 - (f) references to an employee being (or not being) a member of a scheme shall, in relation to a deceased employee, be construed as references to his having been (or not having been) a member of a scheme immediately before the time of his death.

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

SCHEDULE 7 **U.K.**

Section 77.

PERSONAL PENSION SCHEMES

PART I **U.K.**

AMENDMENTS OF TAXES ACT

1 Chapter IV of Part XIV of the Taxes Act 1988 (personal pension schemes) shall be amended as mentioned in the following provisions of this Part of this Schedule.

2 (1) Section 635 (lump sum to member) shall be amended as follows.

(2) The following subsection shall be substituted for subsection (3) (lump sum not to exceed one quarter of value of benefits for member)—

“(3) The lump sum must not exceed one quarter of the difference between—

(a) the total value, at the time when the lump sum is paid, of the benefits provided for by the arrangements made by the member in accordance with the scheme, and

(b) the value, at that time, of such of the member’s rights under the scheme as are protected rights for the purposes of the Social Security Act 1986 or the Social Security (Northern Ireland) Order 1986.”

(3) Subsection (4) (lump sum not to exceed £150,000 or sum specified by Treasury by order) shall cease to have effect.

(4) This paragraph shall have effect in relation to the approval of a scheme on or after the day on which this Act is passed; but if the scheme came into existence before that day sub-paragraph (2) above shall not have effect as regards arrangements made by a member in accordance with the scheme before that day.

3 (1) In section 640 (maximum amount of deductions) the following table shall be substituted for the table in subsection (2) (maximum amount by reference to age)—

36 to 45	20 per cent.
46 to 50	25 per cent.
51 to 55	30 per cent.
56 to 60	35 per cent.
61 or more	40 per cent.

(2) This paragraph shall have effect for the year 1989-90 and subsequent years of assessment.

4 (1) The following section shall be inserted after section 640—

“640A Earnings cap.

(1) In arriving at an individual’s net relevant earnings for a year of assessment for the purposes of section 640 above, any excess of what would be his net relevant earnings for the year (apart from this subsection) over the allowable maximum for the year shall be disregarded.

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (2) In subsection (1) above “the allowable maximum” means, as regards a particular year of assessment, the figure found for that year by virtue of subsections (3) and (4) below.
 - (3) For the year of assessment 1989-90 the figure is £60,000.
 - (4) For the year of assessment 1990-91 and any subsequent year of assessment the figure is the figure found for that year, for the purposes of section 590C, by virtue of section 590C(4) and (5).”
- (2) This paragraph shall have effect for the year 1989-90 and subsequent years of assessment.
- 5 (1) Section 644 (meaning of relevant earnings) shall be amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (2) for “(5)” there shall be substituted “(6F)”.
 - (3) The following subsections shall be inserted after subsection (6)—
 - “(6A) Emoluments of an individual as an employee of a company are not income within subsection (2) above if—
 - (a) he is a controlling director of the company at any time in the year of assessment in question or has been a controlling director of the company at any time in the ten years immediately preceding that year of assessment, and
 - (b) any of subsections (6B) to (6E) below applies in his case.
 - (6B) This subsection applies in the case of the individual if—
 - (a) at any time in the year of assessment in question he is in receipt of benefits under a relevant superannuation scheme, and
 - (b) the benefits are payable in respect of past service with the company.
 - (6C) This subsection applies in the case of the individual if—
 - (a) at any time in the year of assessment in question he is in receipt of benefits under a personal pension scheme,
 - (b) the scheme has received a transfer payment relating to him from a relevant superannuation scheme, and
 - (c) the transfer payment is in respect of past service with the company.
 - (6D) This subsection applies in the case of the individual if—
 - (a) at any time in the year of assessment in question he is in receipt of benefits under a relevant superannuation scheme,
 - (b) the benefits are payable in respect of past service with another company,
 - (c) the emoluments are for a period during which the company mentioned in subsection (6A) above has carried on a trade or business previously carried on by the other company, and
 - (d) the other company carried on the trade or business at any time during the period of service in respect of which the benefits are payable.
 - (6E) This subsection applies in the case of the individual if—
 - (a) at any time in the year of assessment in question he is in receipt of benefits under a personal pension scheme,

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (b) the scheme has received a transfer payment relating to him from a relevant superannuation scheme,
 - (c) the transfer payment is in respect of past service with another company,
 - (d) the emoluments are for a period during which the company mentioned in subsection (6A) above has carried on a trade or business previously carried on by the other company, and
 - (e) the other company carried on the trade or business at any time during the period of service in respect of which the transfer payment was made.
- (6F) For the purposes of subsections (6A) to (6E) above—
- (a) a person is a controlling director of a company if he is a director (as defined by section 612(1)), and he is within paragraph (b) of section 417(5), in relation to the company;
 - (b) “relevant superannuation scheme” has the same meaning as in section 645(1);
 - (c) references to benefits payable in respect of past service with a company include references to benefits payable partly in respect of past service with the company; and
 - (d) references to a transfer payment in respect of past service with a company include references to a transfer payment partly in respect of past service with the company.”
- (4) This paragraph shall be deemed to have come into force on 6th April 1989.
- 6 (1) Section 645 (earnings from pensionable employment) shall be amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (1)(c) for the words “neither subsection (4) nor subsection (5) below applies” there shall be substituted the words “subsection (4) below does not apply”.
 - (3) In subsection (3) the word “and” following paragraph (a) shall be omitted and after paragraph (b) there shall be inserted “and
 - (c) which is of a description mentioned in section 596(1)(a), (b) or (c).”
 - (4) After subsection (4) there shall be inserted—
 - “(4A) Where the emoluments from an office or employment held by an individual are foreign emoluments within the meaning of section 192, this section shall have effect with the substitution of the following for paragraph (c) of subsection (3) above—”
 - (c) which corresponds to a scheme of a description mentioned in section 596(1)(a), (b) or (c).”
 - (5) Subsection (5) shall cease to have effect.
 - (6) This paragraph shall be deemed to have come into force on 6th April 1989.
- 7 (1) In section 646 (“net relevant earnings”) in subsection (1) after the words “(7) below” there shall be inserted the words “and section 646A”.
- (2) This paragraph shall have effect for the year 1989-90 and subsequent years of assessment.
- 8 (1) The following section shall be inserted after section 646—

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

“646A Earnings from associated employments.

- (1) This section applies where in the year of assessment in question—
 - (a) an individual holds two or more offices or employments which are associated in that year,
 - (b) one or more of them is an office or employment to which section 645 applies (“pensionable job”), and
 - (c) one or more of them is an office or employment to which that section does not apply (“non-pensionable job”).
 - (2) Where the emoluments for that year from the pensionable job (or jobs) are equal to or exceed the allowable maximum for that year, section 646(1) shall have effect in the case of the individual as if the references to relevant earnings were references to relevant earnings not attributable to the non-pensionable job (or jobs).
 - (3) Where the allowable maximum for that year exceeds the emoluments for that year from the pensionable job (or jobs), the individual’s net relevant earnings, so far as attributable to the non-pensionable job (or jobs), shall not be greater than the amount of the excess.
 - (4) For the purposes of this section two or more offices or employments held by an individual in a year of assessment are associated in that year if the employers in question are associated at any time during it.
 - (5) For the purposes of subsection (4) above, employers are associated if (directly or indirectly) one is controlled by the other or if both are controlled by a third person.
 - (6) In subsection (5) above the reference to control, in relation to a body corporate, shall be construed—
 - (a) where the body corporate is a close company, in accordance with section 416, and
 - (b) where it is not, in accordance with section 840.
 - (7) In this section “the allowable maximum” has the same meaning as in section 640A(1).”
- (2) This paragraph shall have effect for the year 1989-90 and subsequent years of assessment.
- 9 In section 655(5) (provisional approval in the case of applications made before 1st February 1990) the words “in cases where the applications are made before 1st February 1990” shall be omitted.

PART II U.K.

SCHEMES APPROVED BEFORE PASSING OF THIS ACT

Interpretation

10 In this Part of this Schedule—

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) “personal pension scheme” has the same meaning as in Chapter IV of Part XIV of the Taxes Act 1988, and
- (b) references to approval of such a scheme do not include references to provisional approval under regulations made under section 655(5) of that Act.

Lump sum to member

- 11 (1) This paragraph applies as regards arrangements made by a member of a personal pension scheme approved by the Board before the day on which this Act is passed, if the arrangements are made by the member in accordance with the scheme on or after that day.
- (2) The rules of the scheme shall have effect (notwithstanding anything in them to the contrary) as if any limitation imposed on the maximum amount payable to the member by way of lump sum, and imposed by reference to a fraction of the total value of the benefits for him provided for by the arrangements, were imposed by reference to the same fraction of the difference between—
- (a) the total value, at the time when the lump sum is paid, of the benefits provided for by the arrangements, and
 - (b) the value, at that time, of such of his rights under the scheme as are protected rights for the purposes of the [F275 Pension Schemes Act 1993] or the [F276 Pension Schemes (Northern Ireland) Act 1993].

Textual Amendments

F275 Words in Sch. 7 para. 11(2)(b) substituted (7.2.1994) by 1993 c. 48, s. 190, Sch. 8 para. 22 (with ss. 6(8), 164); S.I. 1994/86, art. 2

F276 Words in Sch. 7 para. 11(2)(b) substituted (7.2.1994) by 1993 c. 49, s. 184, Sch. 7 para. 24; S.R. 1994/17, art. 2

- 12 (1) This paragraph applies where on or after the day on which this Act is passed a lump sum becomes payable under a personal pension scheme approved by the Board before that day.
- (2) The rules of the scheme shall have effect (notwithstanding anything in them to the contrary) as if any limitation imposed on the maximum amount payable to a member by way of lump sum, and imposed by reference to a figure, did not apply.
- (3) The reference in sub-paragraph (2) above to a limitation imposed on the maximum amount payable to a member by way of lump sum does not include a reference to a limitation imposed on the maximum amount so payable out of a transfer payment.

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

Textual Amendments

F277 Sch. 8 paras. 1, 3(3), 7 repealed by Finance Act 1990 (c.29), s. 132, Sch. 19 Pt. IV, Notes 6, 14

2 Section 433 (profits reserved for policy holders or annuitants) shall cease to have effect.

3 (1) In section 434 (franked investment income etc.), for subsection (3) there shall be substituted the following subsections—

“(3) Subject to sections 437 and 438, the policy holders’ fraction of the franked investment income from investments held in connection with a company’s life assurance business shall not be used under Chapter V of Part VI to frank distributions made by the company and, accordingly, for the purposes of that Chapter (other than the application of franked investment income under section 241), in relation to any unrelieved income of a company falling within subsection (1) above, the surplus of franked investment income for any accounting period means the aggregate of—

- (a) the policy holders’ fraction of that franked investment income; and
- (b) the amount determined under section 241(3) on the basis that the reference therein to franked investment income is a reference only to the shareholders’ fraction of that income.

(3A) The policy holders’ fraction of the franked investment income from investments held in connection with a company’s life assurance business shall be left out of account in determining, under subsection (7) of section 13, the franked investment income forming part of the company’s profits for the purposes of that section.”

(2) Subsections (4) and (5) of that section shall be omitted.

(3)

^{F278}(4) In subsection (7) of that section for “(4)” there shall be substituted “(3)” and after the words “against which” there shall be inserted “disregarding relief under section 242”.

Textual Amendments

F278 Sch. 8 paras. 1, 3(3), 7 repealed by Finance Act 1990 (c.29), s. 132, Sch. 19 Pt. IV, Notes 6, 14

^{F279}4

Textual Amendments

F279 Sch. 8 para. 4 repealed (1.5.1995 with effect in accordance with Sch. 8 para. 57 of the amending Act) by 1995 c. 4, s. 162, Sch. 29 Pt. VIII(5), note

5 Section 435 (taxation of gains reserved for policy holders and annuitants) shall cease to have effect.

6 In section 436 (annuity and pension business: separate charge on profits) in subsection (3)(a) for the words “section 433” there shall be substituted “sections 82 and 83 of the Finance Act 1989”.

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

7

F280

Textual Amendments

F280 Sch. 8 paras. 1, 3(3), 7 repealed by Finance Act 1990 (c.29), s. 132, **Sch. 19 Pt. IV**, Notes 6, 14

[^{F281}SCHEDULE 8A U.K.]

Section 89A.

MODIFICATION OF SECTIONS 83 [^{F282}TO 83A] AND 89 IN RELATION TO OVERSEAS LIFE INSURANCE COMPANIES

Textual Amendments

F281 Sch. 8A inserted (27.7.1993) by 1993 c. 34, s. 101(2), **Sch. 10**

F282 Words in Heading to Sch. 8A inserted (29.4.1996) by 1996 c. 8, s. 163, **Sch. 31 para. 8(2)**

[^{F283}1 (1) In their application to an overseas life insurance company [^{F284}sections 83 to 83A] of this Act shall have effect with the modifications specified in paragraphs 1A to 1C below.

(2) In those paragraphs—

- (a) any reference to the Taxes Act 1988 is a reference to that Act as it has effect in relation to such a company by virtue of Schedule 19AC to that Act; and
- (b) any expression to which a meaning is given by section 11A of that Act has that meaning.]

Textual Amendments

F283 Sch. 8A paras. 1, 1A-1C substituted for para. 1 (1.5.1995) by 1995 c. 4, s. 51, **Sch. 8 Pt. II para. 49(2)** (with **Sch. 8 paras. 55(2), 57(1)**)

F284 Words in **Sch. 8A para. 1(1)** substituted (29.4.1996) by 1996 c. 8, s. 163, **Sch. 31 para. 8(3)**

[^{F285}1A (1) The reference in section 83(2)(a) to investment income shall be construed as a reference to such of the income concerned as is attributable to the branch or agency in the United Kingdom through which the company carries on life assurance business.

(2) The reference to assets in section 83(2)(b) (as it applies apart from subsection (3) of that section) shall be construed as a reference to such of the assets concerned—

(a) as are—

- (i) section 11(2)(b) assets;
- (ii) section 11(2)(c) assets; or
- (iii) assets which by virtue of section 11B of the Taxes Act 1988 are attributed to the branch or agency; or

(b) as are assets—

- (i) (in a case where section 11C of that Act (other than subsection (9)) applies) of the relevant fund, or
- (ii) (in a case where that section including that subsection applies) of the relevant funds,

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

other than assets which fall within paragraph (a) above.

- (3) In determining for the purposes of section 83(2) (as it applies apart from subsection (3) of that section) whether there has been any increase or reduction in the value (whether realised or not) of assets—
- (a) no regard shall be had to any period of time during which an asset held by the company does not fall within paragraph (a) or (b) of sub-paragraph (2) above; and
 - (b) in the case of an asset which falls within paragraph (b) of that sub-paragraph, only the specified portion of any increase or reduction in the value of the asset shall be taken into account.

For the purposes of paragraph (b) above the specified portion of any increase or reduction in the value of an asset is found by applying to that increase or reduction the same fraction as would, by virtue of section 11C of the Taxes Act 1988, be applied to any relevant gain accruing to the company on the disposal of the asset.

- (4) For the reference in section 83(3) to any amount [^{F286}being added to the company's [^{F287}long-term insurance] fund], there shall be substituted a reference to assets becoming assets of the [^{F287}long-term insurance] fund used or held for the purposes of the company's United Kingdom branch or agency, having immediately previously been held by the company otherwise than as assets of that fund or used or held otherwise than for those purposes.

The amount of the increase in value under section 83(2)(b), as it applies in relation to such a [^{F288}an addition], shall be taken to be an amount equal to the value of the assets [^{F288}added].

- [Any reference in section 83AA(2), (3) or (4) or 83AB(1) or (3) to an amount being ^{F289}(5) added to the relevant company's [^{F287}long-term insurance] fund shall be construed in accordance with sub-paragraph (4) above.]

Textual Amendments

- F285** Sch. 8A paras. 1, 1A-1C substituted for para. 1 (1.5.1995) by 1995 c. 4, s. 51, **Sch. 8 Pt. II para. 49(2)** (with **Sch. 8 paras. 55(2), 57(1)**)
- F286** Words in Sch. 8A para. 1A(4) substituted (29.4.1996) by 1996 c. 8, s. 163, **Sch. 31 para. 8(4)(a)**
- F287** Words in Sch. 8A para. 1A(4)(5) substituted (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/3629, **art. 60(1)(d)**
- F288** Words in Sch. 8A para. 1A(4) substituted (29.4.1996) by 1996 c. 8, s. 163, **Sch. 31 para. 8(4)(b)**
- F289** Sch. 8A para. 1A(5) added (29.4.1996) by 1996 c. 8, s. 163, **Sch. 31 para. 8(5)**

- ^{F290}1B [The references in section 83A to the company's [^{F292}long-term] business shall be ^{F291}(1)] construed as references to the whole of that business or to the whole of that business other than business in respect of which preparation of a revenue account for the purposes of [^{F293}Chapter 9 of the Prudential Sourcebook (Insurers)] is not required.

- [In sub-paragraph (1) “the Prudential Sourcebook (Insurers)” means the Interim ^{F294}(2) Prudential Sourcebook for Insurers made by the Financial Services Authority under the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000.]

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

Textual Amendments

- F290** Sch. 8A paras. 1, 1A-1C substituted for para. 1 (1.5.1995) by 1995 c. 4, s. 51, **Sch. 8 Pt. II para. 49(2)** (with **Sch. 8 paras. 55(2), 57(1)**)
- F291** Sch. 8A para. 1B renumbered as para. 1B(1) (1.12.2001 with effect as mentioned in art. 59(4)) of the amending S.I.) by **S.I. 2001/3629, art. 59(3)**
- F292** Words in Sch. 8A para. 1B substituted (1.12.2001) by **S.I. 2001/3629, art. 60(2)(b)**
- F293** Words in Sch. 8A para. 1B substituted (1.12.2001 with effect as mentioned in art. 59(4) of the amending S.I.) by **S.I. 2001/3629, art. 59(2)**
- F294** **Sch. 8A para. 1B(2)** inserted (1.12.2001 with effect as mentioned in art. 59(4) of the amending S.I.) by **S.I. 2001/3629, art. 59(3)**

- ^{F295}1C (1) Where for a period of account any investment income referred to in section 83(2)(a) is not otherwise brought into account within the meaning of that section, it shall be treated as brought into account for the period if it arises in the period.
- (2) Where for a period of account any increase in value referred to in section 83(2)(b) (as it applies apart from subsection (3) of that section) is not otherwise brought into account within the meaning of that section, it shall be treated as brought into account for the period if it is shown in the company's records as available to fund one or both of the following for the period, namely, bonuses to policy holders and dividends to shareholders.
- (3) Where for a period of account any reduction in value referred to in section 83(2) (as it applies apart from subsection (3) of that section) is not otherwise brought into account within the meaning of that section, it shall be treated as brought into account for the period if it is shown in the company's records as reducing sums available to fund one or both of the following for the period, namely, bonuses to policy holders and dividends to shareholders.
- (4) Where in any period of account any such [^{F296}addition] is made as is mentioned in section 83(3) which is not otherwise brought into account within the meaning of that section, it shall be treated as brought into account for the period in which it is made.

Textual Amendments

- F295** Sch. 8A paras. 1, 1A-1C substituted for para. 1 (1.5.1995) by 1995 c. 4, s. 51, **Sch. 8 Pt. II para. 49(2)** (with **Sch. 8 paras. 55(2), 57(1)**)
- F296** Word in **Sch. 8A para. 1C(4)** substituted (29.4.1996) by 1996 c. 8, s. 163, **Sch. 31 para. 8(6)**

- ^{F297}2 (1) In its application to an overseas life insurance company section 89 of this Act shall have effect with the following modifications; and in those modifications any reference to the Taxes Act 1988 is a reference to that Act as it has effect in relation to such a company by virtue of Schedule 19AC to that Act.
- (2) Any reference to franked investment income shall be treated as a reference to UK distribution income (as defined by [^{F298}paragraph 5B(4) of that Schedule]).
- (3) Any reference in subsection (5)(a) to income shall be construed as a reference to such of the income concerned as is attributable to the branch or agency in the United Kingdom through which the company carries on life assurance business.

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (4) The reference in subsection (5)(b) to assets shall be construed as a reference to such of the assets concerned—
- (a) as are—
 - (i) section 11(2)(b) assets;
 - (ii) section 11(2)(c) assets; or
 - (iii) assets which by virtue of section 11B of the Taxes Act 1988 are attributed to the branch or agency; or
 - (b) as are assets—
 - (i) (in a case where section 11C of that Act (other than subsection (9)) applies) of the relevant fund, or
 - (ii) (in a case where that section including that subsection applies) of the relevant funds,other than assets which fall within paragraph (a) above.
- (5) In subsection (5)(c) the reference to expenses shall be construed as a reference to such of the expenses concerned as are attributable to the branch or agency.
- (6) In subsection (5)(d) the reference to interest shall be construed as a reference to such of the interest concerned as is so attributable.
- (7) In determining for the purposes of subsection (5) whether there has been any increase or reduction in the value (whether realised or not) of assets—
- (a) no regard shall be had to any period of time during which an asset does not fall within paragraph (a) or (b) of sub-paragraph (4) above; and
 - (b) in the case of an asset which falls within paragraph (b) of that sub-paragraph, only the specified portion of any increase or reduction in the value of the asset shall be taken into account;
- [^{F299}and in paragraph (b) above the “specified portion” has the same meaning as in paragraph 1A(3)(b) above.]
- [For the purposes of this paragraph any expression to which a meaning is given by ^{F300}(7A) section 11A of the Taxes Act 1988 has that meaning.]
- (8) Where for a period of account any item consisting of income, expenses or interest referred to in subsection (5) is not brought into account within the meaning given by subsection (6) it shall be treated as brought into account for the period if it arises in the period.
- (9) Where for a period of account any increase in value referred to in subsection (5) is not brought into account within the meaning given by subsection (6) it shall be treated as brought into account for the period if it is shown in the company’s records as available to fund one or both of the following for the period, namely, bonuses to policy holders and dividends to shareholders.
- (10) Where for a period of account any reduction in value referred to in subsection (5) is not brought into account within the meaning given by subsection (6) it shall be treated as brought into account for the period if it is shown in the company’s records as reducing sums available to fund one or both of the following for the period, namely, bonuses to policy holders and dividends to shareholders.

^{F301}(11)]

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

Textual Amendments

- F297** Sch. 8A inserted (27.7.1993) by 1993 c. 34, s. 101(2), **Sch. 10**
- F298** Words in Sch. 8A para. 2(2) substituted (1.5.1995) by 1995 c. 4, s. 51, **Sch. 8 Pt. II para. 35(5)** (with Sch. 8 paras. 55(2), 57(1))
- F299** Words in Sch. 8A para. 2(7) substituted (1.5.1995) by 1995 c. 4, s. 51, **Sch. 8 Pt. II para. 49(3)** (with Sch. 8 paras. 55(2), 57(1))
- F300** Sch. 8A para. 2(7A) inserted (1.5.1995) by 1995 c. 4, s. 51, **Sch. 8 Pt. II para. 49(4)** (with Sch. 8 paras. 55(2), 57(1))
- F301** Sch. 8A para. 2(11) repealed (1.5.1995 with effect in accordance with Sch. 8 para. 57 of the amending Act) by 1995 c. 4, s. 162, **Sch. 29 Pt. VIII(5)**, note 2

SCHEDULE 9 **U.K.**

Section 90.

LIFE POLICIES ETC. HELD BY COMPANIES

- 1 Chapter II of Part XIII of the Taxes Act 1988 shall be amended as follows.
- 2 At the end of section 539 there shall be added—
- “(9) A policy of life insurance issued in respect of an insurance made before 14th March 1989 shall be treated for the purposes of sections 540(5A), 547(8) and 548(3A) as issued in respect of one made on or after that date if it is varied on or after that date so as to increase the benefits secured or to extend the term of the insurance; and any exercise of rights conferred by the policy shall be regarded for this purpose as a variation.”
- 3 (1) Section 540 shall be amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (4), for the words “this section” there shall be substituted the words “subsections (1) and (3) above”.
- (3) After subsection (5) there shall be inserted—
- “(5A) Sub-paragraphs (i) and (ii) of subsection (1)(b) above shall not apply in relation to a policy issued in respect of an insurance made on or after 14th March 1989 if, immediately before the happening of the event, the rights conferred by the policy were in the beneficial ownership of a company, or were held on trusts created, or as security for a debt owed, by a company.”
- 4 (1) Section 541 shall be amended as follows.
- (2) After subsection (4) there shall be inserted—
- “(4A) Where, immediately before the happening of the chargeable event, the rights conferred by a qualifying endowment policy are held as security for a debt owed by a company, then, if—
- (a) the conditions in subsection (4B) below are satisfied,
- (b) the amount of the debt exceeds the total amount previously paid under the policy by way of premiums, and
- (c) the company makes a claim for the purpose within two years after the end of the accounting period in which the chargeable event happens,

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

this section shall have effect as if the references in subsection (1)(a) and (b) to that total amount were references to the amount of the debt.

(4B) The conditions referred to in subsection (4A) above are—

- (a) that, throughout the period beginning with the making of the insurance and ending immediately before the happening of the chargeable event, the rights conferred by the policy have been held as security for a debt owed by the company;
- (b) that the capital sum payable under the policy in the event of death during the term of the policy is not less than the amount of the debt when the insurance was made;
- (c) that any sum payable under the policy by reason of the chargeable event is applied in repayment of the debt (except to the extent that its amount exceeds the amount of the debt);
- (d) that the debt was incurred to defray money applied—
 - (i) in purchasing an estate or interest in land to be occupied by the company for the purposes of a trade carried on by it, or
 - (ii) for the purpose of the construction, extension or improvement (but not the repair or maintenance) of buildings which are or are to be so occupied.

(4C) If the amount of the debt is higher immediately before the happening of the chargeable event than it was at some earlier time during the period mentioned in subsection (4B)(a) above, the amount to be taken into account for the purposes of subsection (1) above shall be the lowest amount at which it stood during that period.

(4D) If during the period mentioned in subsection (4B)(a) above the company incurs a debt by borrowing in order to repay another debt, subsections (4B) and (4C) above shall have effect as if, where appropriate, references to either debt included references to the other.”

(3) In subsection (5), after paragraph (b) there shall be inserted “and

- (c) “qualifying endowment policy” means a policy which is a qualifying policy by virtue of paragraph 2 of Schedule 15;”.

5 (1) Section 547 shall be amended as follows.

(2) In subsection (1), for paragraph (b) there shall be substituted—

- “(b) if, immediately before the happening of that event, those rights were in the beneficial ownership of a company, or were held on trusts created, or as security for a debt owed, by a company, the amount of the gain shall be deemed to form part of the company’s income (chargeable under Case VI of Schedule D) for the accounting period in which the event happened;”.

(3) After subsection (7) there shall be inserted—

“(8) Subsection (1)(b) above shall not have effect as respects—

- (a) a policy of life insurance issued in respect of an insurance made before 14th March 1989,
- (b) a contract for a life annuity made before that date, or

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (c) a capital redemption policy issued in respect of an insurance made before that date, or issued by a company resident in the United Kingdom in respect of an insurance made on or after that date.”
- 6 (1) Section 548 shall be amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (1)—
- (a) in paragraph (a), after the words “an individual’s total income” there shall be inserted the words “or the income of a company”;
 - (b) in paragraph (c), after the words “that individual” there shall be inserted the words “or company”;
 - (c) for the words “subsection (3)” there shall be substituted the words “subsections (3) and (3A)”.
- (3) After subsection (3) there shall be inserted—
- “(3A) Subsections (1) and (2) do not apply where the rights conferred by the policy or contract are in the beneficial ownership of a company, or are held on trusts created, or as security for a debt owed, by a company, if the policy was issued in respect of an insurance made before 14th March 1989 or the contract was made before that date.”
- 7 In section 552, in subsection (2), after paragraph (b) there shall be inserted “or
- (c) the event is a chargeable event only because of section 540(5A).”
- 8 Paragraph 5 above shall have effect in relation to chargeable events happening in any accounting period of the company concerned which begins after 31st March 1989; but subject to that this Schedule shall have effect as from 14th March 1989.

F302 SCHEDULE 10 U.K.

Textual Amendments

F302 Sch. 10 repealed (29.4.1996) by 1996 c. 8, s. 205, Sch. 41 Pt. V(3) (with savings in Pt. IV Ch. II (ss. 80-105))

F303 SCHEDULE 11 U.K.

Textual Amendments

F303 Sch. 11 repealed (29.4.1996) by 1996 c. 8, ss. 104, 205, Sch. 14 para. 57, Sch. 41 Pt. V(3) (with savings in Pt. IV Ch. II (ss. 80-105))

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

SCHEDULE 12 **U.K.**

Section 107.

CLOSE COMPANIES

PART I **U.K.**

ADMINISTRATIVE PROVISIONS

Interpretation

- 1 In this Part of this Schedule “the relevant provisions” means—
- sections [F325 13 to 13A], 231 and 419 to 422 of the Taxes Act 1988, and
 - Chapter III of Part XI of that Act (as it has effect in relation to accounting periods beginning before 1st April 1989).

Textual Amendments

F325 Words in Sch. 12 para. 1(a) substituted (27.7.1999 with effect as mentioned in s. 28(6)(7) of the amending Act) by 1999 c. 16, s. 28(4)

Provision of information by company

- 2 The inspector may, by notice, require any company which is, or appears to him to be, a close company to furnish him within such time (not being less than 30 days) as may be specified in the notice with such particulars as he thinks necessary for the purposes of the relevant provisions.

Provision of information by shareholders

- 3 (1) If for the purposes of the relevant provisions any person in whose name any shares are registered is so required by notice by the inspector, he shall state whether or not he is the beneficial owner of the shares and, if not the beneficial owner of the shares, shall furnish the name and address of the person or persons on whose behalf the shares are registered in his name.
- (2) This paragraph shall apply in relation to loan capital as it applies in relation to shares.

Information about bearer securities

- 4 (1) The inspector may, for the purposes of the relevant provisions, by notice require—
- any company which appears to him to be a close company to furnish him with particulars of any bearer securities issued by the company, and the names and addresses of the persons to whom the securities were issued and the respective amounts issued to each person, and
 - any person to whom bearer securities were issued by the company, or to or through whom such securities were subsequently sold or transferred, to furnish him with such further information as he may require with a view to enabling him to ascertain the names and addresses of the persons beneficially interested in the securities.
- (2) In this paragraph—

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

“loan creditor” has the same meaning as in Part XI of the Taxes Act 1988, and

“securities” includes shares, stock, bonds, debentures and debenture stock and also any promissory note or other instrument evidencing indebtedness to a loan creditor of the company.

PART II U.K.

AMENDMENTS CONNECTED WITH REPEAL OF CHAPTER III OF PART XI OF TAXES ACT 1988

The Taxes Management Act 1970 (c.9)

- 5 In the first column of the Table in section 98 of the Taxes Management Act 1970 (penalty for failure to give particulars etc.) there shall be added at the end— “Paragraphs 2 to 4 of Schedule 12 to the Finance Act 1989.”

The Capital Gains Tax Act 1979 (c.14)

F3266

Textual Amendments

F326 Sch. 12 para. 6 repealed (6.3.1992 with effect as mentioned in s. 289(1)(2) of the repealing Act) by Taxation of Chargeable Gains Act 1992 (c. 12), ss. 289, 290, Sch.12 (with ss. 201(3), Sch. 11 paras. 22, 26(2), 27)

The Income and Corporation Taxes Act 1988 (c.1)

- 7 In section 13 of the Taxes Act 1988 (small companies’ rate) in subsection (9) for the words “paragraph 17 of Schedule 19” there shall be substituted the words “paragraphs 2 to 4 of Schedule 12 to the Finance Act 1989”.

- 8 (1) In section 168(11) of the Taxes Act 1988 (cases in which a person has a material interest in a company for the purposes of Chapter II of Part V of that Act) for the words from “in a company” to the end of paragraph (b) there shall be substituted—

“in a company if he, either on his own or with one or more associates, or if any associate of his with or without such other associates,—

- (a) is the beneficial owner of, or able, directly or through the medium of other companies, or by any other indirect means to control, more than 5 percent. of the ordinary share capital of the company, or
- (b) in the case of a close company, possesses, or is entitled to acquire, such rights as would, in the event of the winding-up of the company or in any other circumstances, give an entitlement to receive more than 5 per cent. of the assets which would then be available for distribution among the participators.” and at the end there shall be added the words “, and “participator” has the meaning given by section 417(1) ”.

- (2) This paragraph shall have effect in relation to accounting periods beginning after 31st March 1989.

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- 9 (1) In section 187(3) of the Taxes Act 1988 (cases in which a person has a material interest in a company for the purposes of sections 185 to 187 of, and Schedules 9 and 10 to, that Act) for the words from “in a company” to the end of paragraph (b) there shall be substituted—
- “in a company if he, either on his own or with one or more associates, or if any associate of his with or without such other associates,—
- (a) is the beneficial owner of, or able, directly or through the medium of other companies, or by any other indirect means to control, more than 25 percent., or in the case of a share option scheme which is not a savings-related share option scheme more than 10 percent., of the ordinary share capital of the company, or
- (b) where the company is a close company, possesses, or is entitled to acquire, such rights as would, in the event of the winding-up of the company or in any other circumstances, give an entitlement to receive more than 25 percent., or in the case of a share option scheme which is not a savings-related share option scheme more than 10 percent., of the assets which would then be available for distribution among the participators.” and at the end there shall be added the words “ and “participator” has the meaning given by section 417(1) ”.
- (2) This paragraph shall have effect in relation to accounting periods beginning after 31st March 1989.
- 10 (1) In section 214 of the Taxes Act 1988 (chargeable payments connected with exempt distributions) in subsection (1)(c) for the words from “338(2)(a)” to “Schedule 19” there shall be substituted the words “and 338(2)(a)”.
- (2) This paragraph shall have effect in relation to accounting periods beginning after 31st March 1989, except in any case where section 427(4) of the Taxes Act 1988 has effect by virtue of section 103(2) of this Act.
- 11 In section 234 of the Taxes Act 1988 (information relating to distributions) in subsection (9) for the words from “paragraph 17” to “that Schedule” there shall be substituted the words “paragraphs 2 to 4 of Schedule 12 to the Finance Act 1989 for the purposes of the relevant provisions (as defined in paragraph 1 of that Schedule)”.
- 12 (1) Section 360 of the Taxes Act 1988 (loan to buy interest in a close company) shall be amended in accordance with this paragraph.
- (2) In subsection (1)(a) for the words from “satisfying” to “424(4)” there shall be substituted the words “complying with section 13A(2)”.
- (3) In subsections (2)(a) and (3)(a) for the words “satisfy any of the conditions of section 424(4)” there shall be substituted the words “comply with section 13A(2)”.
- (4) This paragraph shall have effect in relation to interest paid on or after the day on which this Act is passed (and, accordingly, the conditions of section 424(4) of the Taxes Act 1988 shall continue to have effect for the purposes of section 360 of that Act in relation to interest paid before that day).
- 13 (1) Section 360A of the Taxes Act 1988 (cases in which a person has a material interest in a company for the purposes of section 360(2)(a)) shall be amended in accordance with this paragraph.

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (2) In subsection (1) for the words from “in a company” onwards there shall be substituted—
- “in a company if he, either on his own or with one or more associates, or if any associate of his with or without such other associates,—
- (a) is the beneficial owner of, or able, directly or through the medium of other companies, or by any other indirect means to control, more than 5 percent. of the ordinary share capital of the company, or
- (b) possesses, or is entitled to acquire, such rights as would, in the event of the winding-up of the company or in any other circumstances, give an entitlement to receive more than 5 per cent. of the assets which would then be available for distribution among the participators.”
- (3) In subsection (10) after the word “section” there shall be inserted the words “participator” has the meaning given by section 417(1) and”.
- (4) This paragraph shall have effect in relation to accounting periods beginning after 31st March 1989.
- 14 (1) In section 576 of the Taxes Act 1988 (which relates to relief for losses on certain unquoted shares) in subsection (5), for paragraph (a) of the definition of “trading company” there shall be substituted—
- “(a) a company whose business consists wholly or mainly of the carrying on of a trade or trades”.
- (2) This paragraph shall have effect in relation to disposals made after 31st March 1989.
- 15 (1) In section 623 of the Taxes Act 1988 (meaning of “relevant earnings” for the purposes of Chapter III of Part XIV of that Act) in subsection (2) for the words “(construed in accordance with paragraph 7 of Schedule 19)” there shall be substituted the words “(that is to say, income which, if the company were an individual, would not be earned income)”.
- (2) This paragraph shall have effect in relation to accounting periods beginning after 31st March 1989.
- 16 (1) In section 644 of the Taxes Act 1988 (meaning of “relevant earnings” for the purposes of Chapter IV of Part XIV of that Act) in subsection (6) for the definition of “investment income” there shall be substituted—
- ““investment income” means income which, if the company were an individual, would not be earned income.”
- (2) This paragraph shall have effect in relation to accounting periods beginning after 31st March 1989.
- 17 In section 745 of the Taxes Act 1988 (power to obtain information for the purposes of Chapter III of Part XVII of that Act) in subsection (4) for the words from “trading” onwards there shall be substituted the words “companies whose business consists wholly or mainly of the carrying on of a trade or trades.”
- 18 (1) Paragraph 7 of Schedule 8 to the Taxes Act 1988 (cases in which a person has a material interest in a company for the purposes of a profit-related pay scheme) shall be amended in accordance with this paragraph.

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

(2) In sub-paragraph (2) for the words from “in a company” onwards there shall be substituted—

“in a company if he, either on his own or with one or more associates, or if any associate of his with or without such other associates,—

- (a) is the beneficial owner of, or able, directly or through the medium of other companies, or by any other indirect means to control, more than 25 percent. of the ordinary share capital of the company, or
- (b) in the case of a close company, possesses, or is entitled to acquire, such rights as would, in the event of the winding-up of the company or in any other circumstances, give an entitlement to receive more than 25 per cent. of the assets which would then be available for distribution among the participators”.

(3) In sub-paragraph (3) the second “and” shall be omitted and after the definition of “control” there shall be inserted “and

“participator” has the meaning given by section 417(1)”.

(4) This paragraph shall have effect in relation to accounting periods beginning after 31st March 1989.

SCHEDULE 13 **U.K.**

Section 121.

CAPITAL ALLOWANCES: MISCELLANEOUS AMENDMENTS

1–26 F327

Textual Amendments

F327 Sch. 13 paras. 1–26, 28–30 repealed by Capital Allowance Act 1990 (c. 1), s. 164(4)(5), Sch. 2

Patent rights

F328 27

Textual Amendments

F328 Sch. 13 para. 27 repealed (22.3.2001 with effect as mentioned in s. 579(1) of the amending Act) by 2001 c. 2, s. 580, Sch. 4

28–30 F329

Textual Amendments

F329 Sch. 13 paras. 1–26, 28–30 repealed by Capital Allowance Act 1990 (c. 1), s. 164(4)(5), Sch. 2

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

F330 SCHEDULE 14 U.K.

Textual Amendments

F330 Sch. 14 repealed (6.3.1992 with effect as mentioned in s. 289(1)(2) of the repealing Act) by [Taxation of Chargeable Gains Act 1992 \(c. 12\)](#), ss. 289, 290, [Sch. 12](#) (with s. 201(3), [Sch. 11 paras. 22, 26\(2\), 27](#))

Gifts of business assets

F331₁

Textual Amendments

F331 Sch. 14 repealed (6.3.1992 with effect as mentioned in s. 289(1)(2) of the repealing Act) by [Taxation of Chargeable Gains Act 1992 \(c. 12\)](#), ss. 289, 290, [Sch. 12](#) (with s. 201(3), [Sch. 11 paras. 22, 26\(2\), 27](#))

F332₂

Textual Amendments

F332 Sch. 14 repealed (6.3.1992 with effect as mentioned in s. 289(1)(2) of the repealing Act) by [Taxation of Chargeable Gains Act 1992 \(c. 12\)](#), ss. 289, 290, [Sch. 12](#) (with s. 201(3), [Sch. 11 paras. 22, 26\(2\), 27](#))

F333₃

Textual Amendments

F333 Sch. 14 repealed (6.3.1992 with effect as mentioned in s. 289(1)(2) of the repealing Act) by [Taxation of Chargeable Gains Act 1992 \(c. 12\)](#), ss. 289, 290, [Sch. 12](#) (with s. 201(3), [Sch. 11 paras. 22, 26\(2\), 27](#))

Gifts on which inheritance tax is chargeable etc.

F334₄

Textual Amendments

F334 Sch. 14 repealed (6.3.1992 with effect as mentioned in s. 289(1)(2) of the repealing Act) by [Taxation of Chargeable Gains Act 1992 \(c. 12\)](#), ss. 289, 290, [Sch. 12](#) (with s. 201(3), [Sch. 11 paras. 22, 26\(2\), 27](#))

Payment of tax by instalments

F335₅

Textual Amendments

F335 Sch. 14 repealed (6.3.1992 with effect as mentioned in s. 289(1)(2) of the repealing Act) by [Taxation of Chargeable Gains Act 1992 \(c. 12\)](#), ss. 289, 290, [Sch. 12](#) (with s. 201(3), [Sch. 11 paras. 22, 26\(2\), 27](#))

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

Minor and consequential amendments

F336⁶

Textual Amendments

F336 Sch. 14 repealed (6.3.1992 with effect as mentioned in s. 289(1)(2) of the repealing Act) by [Taxation of Chargeable Gains Act 1992 \(c. 12\)](#), ss. 289, 290, **Sch.12** (with s. 201(3), Sch. 11 paras. 22, 26(2), 27)

F337 SCHEDULE 15 **U.K.**

Textual Amendments

F337 Sch. 15 repealed (6.3.1992 with effect as mentioned in s. 289(1)(2) of the repealing Act) by [Taxation of Chargeable Gains Act 1992 \(c. 12\)](#), ss. 289, 290, **Sch.12** (with s. 201(3), Sch. 11 paras. 22, 26(2), 27)

Postponed charges etc.: pre-1st April 1982 events

F338¹

Textual Amendments

F338 Sch. 15 repealed (6.3.1992 with effect as mentioned in s. 289(1)(2) of the repealing Act) by [Taxation of Chargeable Gains Act 1992 \(c. 12\)](#), ss. 289, 290, **Sch. 12** (with s. 201(3), Sch. 11 paras. 22, 26(2), 27)

F339²

Textual Amendments

F339 Sch. 15 repealed (6.3.1992 with effect as mentioned in s. 289(1)(2) of the repealing Act) by [Taxation of Chargeable Gains Act 1992 \(c. 12\)](#), ss. 289, 290, **Sch.12** (with s. 201(3), Sch. 11 paras. 22, 26(2), 27)

Reduction of 1982 value in certain cases

F340³

Textual Amendments

F340 Sch. 15 repealed (6.3.1992 with effect as mentioned in s. 289(1)(2) of the repealing Act) by [Taxation of Chargeable Gains Act 1992 \(c. 12\)](#), ss. 289, 290, **Sch.12** (with s. 201(3), Sch. 11 paras. 22, 26(2), 27)

No gain/no loss disposals

F341⁴

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

Textual Amendments

F341 Sch. 15 repealed (6.3.1992 with effect as mentioned in s. 289(1)(2) of the repealing Act) by [Taxation of Chargeable Gains Act 1992 \(c. 12\)](#), ss. 289, 290, **Sch.12** (with s. 201(3), Sch. 11 paras. 22, 26(2), 27)

Elections

F342⁵

Textual Amendments

F342 Sch. 15 repealed (6.3.1992 with effect as mentioned in s. 289(1)(2) of the repealing Act) by [Taxation of Chargeable Gains Act 1992 \(c. 12\)](#), ss. 289, 290, **Sch.12** (with s. 201(3), Sch. 11 paras. 22, 26(2), 27)

[^{F343}SCHEDULE 16 **U.K.**

Section 181.

BROADCASTING: ADDITIONAL PAYMENTS BY PROGRAMME CONTRACTORS

Textual Amendments

F343 S. 181, Sch. 16 repealed (prosp. as mentioned in S.I. 1990/2347, **art. 3(3)**) by [Broadcasting Act 1990 \(c. 42, SIF 96\)](#), ss. 127-129, 134, 203(3), 204(2), Schs. 9-12, **Sch. 21**

PART I **U.K.**

AMENDMENTS OF THE PRINCIPAL SECTIONS

- 1 (1) Section 32 of the ^{M116}Broadcasting Act 1981 (rental payments by programme contractors) shall be amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (1)(b), after the word “amounts” there shall be inserted the words “in respect of profits and in respect of advertising revenue”.
- (3) In subsection (2)(b), after the word “amounts” there shall be inserted the words “in respect of profits”.
- (4) In subsection (4), for the word “Table”, where it first occurs, there shall be substituted the word “Tables” and the following Tables shall be substituted for the Table in that subsection—

“TABLE A

RATES OF ADDITIONAL PAYMENTS IN
 RESPECT OF ADVERTISING REVENUE

*Rate for determining amount of
 additional payments*

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

For so much of the advertising revenue for the accounting period as does not exceed the free slice for advertising revenue.	Nil
For so much of the advertising revenue for the accounting period as exceeds the free slice for advertising revenue.	The relevant revenue rate except where the rate is nil

For the purposes of this Table—

- (a) a nil rate, instead of the relevant revenue rate, is applicable in the case of persons who are DBS programme contractors or DBS teletext contractors;
- (b) the relevant revenue rate is 10 per cent; and
- (c) the free slice for advertising revenue is £15 million or, in the case of a TV programme contractor, that amount with the addition of the payments payable by him in pursuance of section 13(2).

TABLE B

RATES OF ADDITIONAL PAYMENTS IN RESPECT OF PROFITS

For so much of the profits for the accounting period after deducting any amount payable under Table A as does not exceed the free slice for profits.	Nil
For so much of the profits for the accounting period after deducting any amount payable under Table A as exceeds the free slice for profits.	The relevant profits rate except where the rate is nil.

For the purposes of this Table—

- (a) a nil rate, instead of the relevant profits rate, is applicable in the case of—
 - (i) programme contractors who provide local sound broadcasts, and
 - (ii) DBS programme contractors or DBS teletext contractors;
- (b) the relevant profits rate is 25 per cent; and
- (c) the free slice for profits is £2 million.”

(5) Subsection (4A) shall be omitted.

(6) In subsection (5), for the words “relevant sum mentioned in subsection(4A)” there shall be substituted the words “relevant sum mentioned in the Tables above”.

(7) In subsection (7), after the words “additional payments” there shall be inserted the words “in respect of profits”.

(8) In subsection (8), for the words “any of the provisions of subsections(4), (4A)” there shall be substituted the words “any of the provisions of subsections (4)”.

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

(9) For subsection (9) there shall be substituted the following subsections—

“(9) The power of the Secretary of State under subsection (8) shall include power to amend the provisions in question as there mentioned—

- (a) only in their application in relation to the additional payments mentioned in subsection (1)(b); or
- (b) only in their application in relation to the additional payments mentioned in subsection (2)(b); or
- (c) differently in their application as mentioned in paragraphs (a) and (b) respectively; or
- (d) only in their application in relation to additional payments in respect of advertising revenue; or
- (e) only in their application in relation to additional payments in respect of profits; or
- (f) differently in their application as mentioned in paragraphs (d) and (e) respectively.

(9A) In the application of the provisions mentioned in subsection (8) in relation to the additional payments mentioned in subsection (1)(b), the power of the Secretary of State under subsection (8) shall also include power to amend those provisions as mentioned in subsection (8)—

- (a) only in relation to persons who are TV programme contractors (including persons who are both TV programme contractors and teletext contractors); or
- (b) only in relation to persons who are DBS programme contractors (including persons who are both DBS programme contractors and teletext contractors); or
- (c) only in relation to persons who are teletext contractors (other than DBS teletext contractors) but are not TV or DBS programme contractors; or
- (d) only in relation to persons who are DBS teletext contractors but are not TV or DBS programme contractors; or
- (e) differently in relation to persons within paragraphs (a), (b), (c) and (d) respectively.”

Marginal Citations

M116 1981 c. 68.

- 2 (1) Section 33 of the ^{M117}Broadcasting Act 1981 (supplemental provisions) shall be amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (1), for the words “advertising receipts” there shall be substituted the words “advertising revenue”.
- (3) In subsection (2), for the words “advertising receipts” there shall be substituted the words “advertising revenue” and for the words “those receipts derive” there shall be substituted the words “the revenue derives”.

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (4) In subsection (3)(c), for the words “advertising receipts” there shall be substituted the words “advertising revenue” and for the word “derive” there shall be substituted the word “derives”.

Marginal Citations

M117 1981 c. 68.

- 3 (1) Section 34 of the Broadcasting Act 1981 (instalments payable on account by programme contractors for their accounting periods) shall be amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (3)(c), for the words “receipts are” there shall be substituted the words “revenue is”.
- 4 (1) Section 35 of the ^{M118}Broadcasting Act 1981 (provision for supplementing additional payments) shall be amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (1)—
- (a) in paragraph (a), after the words “additional payments” there shall be inserted the words “in respect of profits”;
 - (b) in paragraph (b)(ii), the words “in the case of second category profits,” shall be omitted; and
 - (c) at the end, there shall be added the words “in respect of profits of his for that period”.

Marginal Citations

M118 1981 c. 68.

PART II U.K.

PROVISIONS INSERTED AS SCHEDULE 4 TO THE BROADCASTING ACT 1981

“SCHEDULE 4 U.K.

RENTAL PAYMENTS

Advertising revenue

- 1 (1) The advertising revenue of a programme contractor for an accounting period shall be computed in accordance with this paragraph.
- (2) Advertising revenue shall consist of the payments received or to be received by the programme contractor in consideration of the insertion of advertisements in programmes provided by the programme contractor and broadcast in the United Kingdom by the Authority.
- (3) In the application of this Schedule in relation to the additional payments mentioned in section 32(1)(b), the advertising revenue of a programme contractor other than a teletext contractor who is not a TV programme contractor includes payments received or to be received by him in consideration of the insertion of programmes consisting

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

of advertisements provided by him for broadcasting on the Fourth Channel and so broadcast.

- (4) If, in connection with the insertion of advertisements which are paid for by payments constituting advertising revenue, any payments are made to the programme contractor to meet any additional payments, those payments shall be regarded as made in consideration of the insertion of the advertisements in question.
- (5) In the case of an advertisement inserted in a programme under arrangements made between a programme contractor and a person acting as advertising agent, the amount of any receipt by the programme contractor which represents a payment by the advertiser from which the advertising agent has deducted any amount by way of commission shall, except in a case falling within sub-paragraph (6), be the amount of the payment by the advertiser after the deduction of the commission.
- (6) If the amount deducted by way of commission as mentioned in sub-paragraph (5) exceeds 15 per cent. of the payment by the advertiser, the amount of the receipt shall be the amount of that payment less 15 per cent.
- (7) Any contract shall provide that where for any insertion of an advertisement a programme contractor receives or is entitled to an entire consideration not solely referable to that insertion, the advertising revenue shall be calculated by reference to so much only of the consideration as is referable to that insertion according to an apportionment made in such manner as the contract may provide.

Profits

- 2 (1) The profits of a programme contractor for an accounting period shall be computed in accordance with this paragraph.
- (2) The profits shall consist of the excess of relevant income over relevant expenditure.
- (3) “Relevant income” means—
 - (a) in relation to a programme contractor other than a DBS programme contractor or a DBS teletext contractor, income which accrues to the contractor in connection (directly or indirectly) with—
 - (i) the provision by the contractor of programmes for broadcasting on ITV, the Fourth Channel or a local sound broadcasting service, or
 - (ii) the provision by the contractor, for broadcasting, distribution or showing in the United Kingdom, of programmes provided by him for broadcasting on ITV, the Fourth Channel or a local sound broadcasting service;
 - (b) in relation to a DBS programme contractor or DBS teletext contractor, income which accrues to the contractor in connection (directly or indirectly) with—
 - (i) the provision by the contractor to the Authority, in accordance with the terms of his contract as a DBS programme contractor or (as the case may be) DBS teletext contractor, of programmes for broadcasting in the Authority’s DBS service to which his contract with the Authority relates, or
 - (ii) the provision by the contractor, for broadcasting, distribution or showing in the United Kingdom, of programmes broadcast in the Authority’s DBS service.
- (4) Without prejudice to the generality of sub-paragraph (3), “relevant income” includes—

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) all revenue which is advertising revenue for the purposes of this paragraph; and
 - (b) such part of any income which—
 - (i) accrues to any subsidiary of or company related to the programme contractor or to the contractor’s holding company, and
 - (ii) would be relevant income of that contractor if he and the subsidiary or related company or his holding company were a single programme contractor,as, in the opinion of the Authority, should be attributed to the contractor as reflecting his financial interest in the subsidiary or the respective financial interests of the holding company in the contractor and the company related to the contractor or the financial interest of the holding company in the contractor, as the case may be.
- (5) For the purposes of this paragraph advertising revenue includes—
- (a) in relation to a DBS programme contractor, payments received or to be received by him in respect of charges made for the reception of programmes provided by him and broadcast in a DBS service;
 - (b) in relation to a teletext contractor, payments received or to be received by him in respect of charges made for the reception of programmes provided by him and broadcast in a DBS or additional teletext service.
- (6) “Relevant expenditure” means any expenditure of the programme contractor which is properly chargeable to revenue account and which is incurred in connection with the provision by him of programmes of a kind mentioned in sub-paragraph (3).
- (7) Without prejudice to the generality of sub-paragraph (6), “relevant expenditure” includes—
- (a) expenditure in connection with the sale of rights to insert advertisements in programmes; and
 - (b) such part of any expenditure which—
 - (i) is incurred by any subsidiary of or company related to the programme contractor or by the contractor’s holding company, and
 - (ii) would be relevant expenditure of that contractor if he and the subsidiary or related company or his holding company were a single programme contractor,as, in the opinion of the Authority, should be attributed to the contractor as reflecting his financial interest in the subsidiary or the respective financial interests of the holding company in the contractor and the company related to the contractor or the financial interest of the holding company in the contractor, as the case may be;
 - (c) in the case of a DBS programme contractor or a teletext contractor, any expenditure incurred in connection with the collection of charges for the reception of programmes provided by him and broadcast in a DBS service or in a DBS or additional teletext service, as the case may be; and
 - (d) in the case of a DBS programme or DBS teletext contractor, any expenditure incurred in connection with the provision of the satellite transponder.
- (8) In ascertaining relevant income or relevant expenditure no account shall be taken of interest on any loan.

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (9) Items of relevant income and items of relevant expenditure shall be attributed to accounting periods in accordance with the foregoing provisions of this Schedule.
- (10) In this paragraph “programme” means—
- (a) in the application of this Schedule in relation to the additional payments mentioned in section 32(1)(b), a television programme; and
 - (b) in the application of this Schedule in relation to the additional payments mentioned in section 32(2)(b), a local sound broadcast.

Carry forward of losses

- 3 (1) Where, in any accounting period, the relevant expenditure of a programme contractor exceeds his relevant income, the excess shall be carried forward to the following accounting period and treated as relevant expenditure for that period for the purpose of computing his profits for that period.
- (2) When a programme contractor’s contract with the Authority comes to an end, no losses incurred at any time during the currency of that contract may be carried forward under this paragraph and set against income attributable to any subsequent contract between him and the Authority.

Computation of profits of programme contractors

- 4 (1) It shall be the duty of the Authority—
- (a) to draw up, and from time to time review, a statement setting out the principles to be followed in ascertaining, for any accounting period, a programme contractor’s—
 - (i) advertising revenue, and
 - (ii) relevant income and relevant expenditure for the purpose of computing his profits;
 - (b) in computing the advertising revenue and the profits of a programme contractor for any accounting period, to take account of that statement (including any revision thereof which has taken effect before the end of that period).
- (2) A statement under this paragraph may set out different principles for TV programme contractors, DBS programme contractors, programme contractors for the provision of local sound broadcasting and teletext contractors.
- (3) Before drawing up or revising a statement under this paragraph the Authority shall consult the Secretary of State and the Treasury.
- (4) The Authority shall—
- (a) publish the statement drawn up under this paragraph and every revision of that statement; and
 - (b) transmit a copy of the statement, and of every revision of it, to the Secretary of State;
- and the Secretary of State shall lay copies of the statement and of every such revision before each House of Parliament.
- (5) The principles relating to advertising revenue and to profits may be set out in separate statements under this paragraph; and where this is done its provisions apply to each statement.

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

Disputes

- 5 (1) For the purposes of the principal sections and this Schedule—
- (a) the amount of any advertising revenue, or
 - (b) the amount of any profits, or
 - (c) the amount of any additional payments, or of an instalment of additional payments,
- shall, in the event of a disagreement between the Authority and the programme contractor, be the amount determined by the Authority.
- (2) No determination of the Authority under this paragraph shall be called in question in any court of law, or be the subject of any arbitration; but nothing in this sub-paragraph shall prevent the bringing of proceedings for judicial review.

Accounting periods

- 6 (1) Subject to the provisions of this Schedule, each period for which a body corporate which is a programme contractor makes up a profit and loss account which is laid before the body corporate in general meeting shall be an accounting period, whether that period is a year or not.
- (2) If part of the said period for which a profit and loss account is made up falls before, and part after—
- (a) the commencement of a relevant order under section 32, or
 - (b) the time when the programme contractor begins or ceases to provide programmes for broadcasting by the Authority,
- the two parts shall be treated as separate accounting periods.
- In paragraph (a) “relevant order” means, in the application of this Schedule in relation to the additional payments mentioned in subsection (1)(b) or (as the case may be) subsection (2)(b) of section 32, an order having effect in relation to those payments.
- (3) Where two parts of such a period as is mentioned in sub-paragraph (1) fall to be divided from each other under sub-paragraph (2)(a), section 32(4) shall have effect as if the profits and advertising revenue for each part were the profits and advertising revenue for the whole multiplied by—

$$\frac{X}{X+Y}$$

where X and Y are respectively the number of weeks in that part and the number of weeks in the other part, counting (in each case) an odd four days or more as a week.

- (4) If sub-paragraph (2)(b) would produce an accounting period of three months or less, that period shall be added on to the accounting period (if any) which precedes or succeeds it (and which does not fall to be divided from it under sub-paragraph (2)(b)).
- (5) A contract which varies another contract may modify the preceding provisions of this paragraph.
- (6) Nothing in this paragraph shall create an accounting period during which the programme contractor is not providing programmes for broadcasting by the Authority.

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- 7 If a programme contractor is not a body corporate the contractor's accounting periods shall be such as the Authority may direct, or as may be provided in the contract.

Information

- 8 (1) Every contract shall impose on the contractor such requirements with respect to the furnishing of information to the Authority as appear to the Authority, after consultation with the Secretary of State, to be requisite—
- (a) for enabling the Authority to perform their functions under the provisions of the principal sections and this Schedule, and
 - (b) for enabling the Authority to furnish to the Secretary of State such information as he may require for the purpose of determining whether, and in what manner, to exercise his powers of making orders under the said provisions.
- (2) Without prejudice to the generality of sub-paragraph (1), the duty imposed on the Authority by that sub-paragraph includes the duty to impose, so far as is reasonably practicable, such requirements as will enable the Authority to determine the amounts (if any) which, in relation to any programme contractor, are to be treated as advertising revenue and relevant income and relevant expenditure for the computation of profits by virtue, respectively, of paragraphs 1 and 2.
- (3) It shall be the duty of the Authority to furnish to the Secretary of State such information (whether obtained from contractors or otherwise) as is in their possession and is required by the Secretary of State for the purpose of determining whether, and in what manner, to exercise his powers of making orders under the said provisions.
- 9 It shall be the duty of the Authority in framing any contract to include terms ensuring that the Authority will have the right to inspect accounts and records—
- (a) of the programme contractor, and
 - (b) of any subsidiary of the programme contractor,
- for the purpose of discharging their functions under the principal sections and this Schedule.

Interpretation

- 10 (1) In this Schedule, and in the principal sections, except where the context otherwise requires—
- “accounting period” shall be construed in accordance with paragraph 6;
- “additional payments” and “contract”—
- (a) in the application of this Schedule and the principal sections in relation to the additional payments mentioned in section 32(1)(b), mean respectively additional payments payable by virtue of that paragraph and a contract between the Authority and a programme contractor under which television programmes are to be provided by the programme contractor, and
 - (b) in their application in relation to the additional payments mentioned in section 32(2)(b), mean respectively additional payments payable by virtue of that paragraph and a contract between the Authority and a programme contractor under which local sound broadcasts are to be provided by the programme contractor;
- “related”, in relation to a company and a programme contractor, means that another person (whether alone or jointly with one or more persons and whether directly or indirectly) holds, or is beneficially entitled to, 50 per cent or more of

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

the equity share capital, or possesses 50 per cent or more of the voting power, in the company and in the programme contractor and “holding company” means that other person; and

“subsidiary”, in relation to any person, means a company in which that person (whether alone or jointly with one or more persons and whether directly or indirectly) holds, or is beneficially entitled to, 10 per cent or more of the equity share capital, or possesses 10 per cent or more of the voting power.

- (2) In this Schedule “payment” includes any valuable consideration, and references to revenue and receipts and expenditure shall be construed accordingly.”

PART III U.K.

TRANSITIONAL PROVISIONS

- 1 (1) In this paragraph—

“new statutory provisions” means the provisions of the ^{M119}Broadcasting Act 1981 as amended by this Act; and

“existing statutory provisions” means the provisions of that Act as they had effect immediately before the coming into force of section 181.

- (2) Any contract between the Authority and a programme contractor which is in force immediately before the day on which section 181 of this Act comes into force shall, until it is varied or superseded by a further contract between them or expires or is otherwise terminated (whichever first occurs), be deemed to be modified by virtue of this Schedule so as—

- (a) to substitute provisions in conformity with the new statutory provisions for so much of the contract as is in accordance with the existing statutory provisions and is not in conformity with the new statutory provisions, and
- (b) to incorporate in the contract such additional provisions as a contract between the Authority and a programme contractor is required to include in accordance with the new statutory provisions;

and (subject to paragraph 5 of Schedule 4 to the 1981 Act) any provisions of the contract which provide for arbitration as to any matters contained in the contract in accordance with the existing statutory provisions shall be construed as making the like provision for arbitration in relation to matters deemed to be included in the contract by virtue of this sub-paragraph.

- (3) Where it appears to the Authority that the new statutory provisions call for the inclusion of additional terms in any such contract, but do not afford sufficient particulars of what those terms should be, the Authority may, after consulting the programme contractor, decide what those terms are to be.
- (4) This paragraph shall not be taken to have effect in relation to any contract entered into by a programme contractor and any person other than the Authority before the day on which section 181 of this Act comes into force.

Marginal Citations

M119 1981 c. 68.

*Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.**Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- 2 Where any accounting period of a programme contractor begins before 1st January 1990 and ends after 31st December 1989, the additional payments payable by the programme contractor in relation to that accounting period under section 32 of the ^{M120}Broadcasting Act 1981 shall be the aggregate of—
- (a) the amounts payable by him on the assumption that section 181 of this Act was not in force at any time during the accounting period, multiplied by—

$$\frac{X}{X + Y},$$

and

- (b) the amounts payable by him on the assumption that that section was in force throughout the accounting period, multiplied by—

$$\frac{Y}{X + Y};$$

where (taking any odd four days or more as a week)—

X is the number of weeks in the accounting period falling before 1st January 1990, and

Y is the number of weeks in the accounting period falling after 31st December 1989.

Marginal Citations

M120 1981 c. 68.

- 3 Where, under the existing statutory provisions, any excess of first category expenditure over first category income of a programme contractor would have been carried forward and treated as relevant first category expenditure of his for an accounting period ending after 31st December 1989 if those provisions had applied in relation to that period then the excess shall be carried forward and treated, under the new statutory provisions, as relevant expenditure of the contractor for any accounting period which ends after that date.
- 4 In this Part of this Schedule, references to programme contractors shall be read as including references to teletext contractors.]

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

SCHEDULE 17 **U.K.**

Section 187.

REPEALS

PART I **U.K.**

CUSTOMS AND EXCISE

1979 c. 2.	The Customs and Excise Management Act 1979.	Section 17(5)(a).Section 147(1).
1979 c. 4.	The Alcoholic Liquor Duties Act 1979.	Section 73.
1988 c. 39.	The Finance Act 1988.	Section 11(2).

The repeals of section 147(1) of the Customs and Excise Management Act 1979 and section 11(2) of the Finance Act 1988 have effect in relation to offences committed on or after the day on which this Act is passed.

^{F344}PART II **U.K.**

Textual Amendments

F344 Sch. 17 Pt. II repealed (20.7.1998) by S.I. 1998/1446, art. 30(2), Sch. 2 Pt. I

PART III **U.K.**

VALUE ADDED TAX

1983 c. 55.	The Value Added Tax Act 1983.	In Schedule 5, Group 6 and, in Group 8A, Note (5).
1984 c. 43.	The Finance Act 1984.	In Schedule 6, Part II.
S.I. 1986/704.	The Value Added Tax (Land) Order 1986.	The whole Order.
S.I. 1986/716.	The Value Added Tax (Land) (No.2) Order 1986.	The whole Order.
S.I. 1987 /1072.	The Value Added Tax (Construction of Buildings) (No.2) Order 1987.	Article 2.

- 1 The repeal of Group 6 of Schedule 5 to the Value Added Tax Act 1983 has effect in relation to supplies made on or after 1st April 1989.
- 2 The remaining repeals have effect in accordance with Schedule 3 to this Act.

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

PART IV U.K.

INCOME AND CORPORATION TAX: GENERAL

1970 c. 9.	The Taxes Management Act 1970.	In section 15(11), paragraph (b) and the word “and” preceding it.
1988 c. 1.	The Income and Corporation Taxes Act 1988.	In section 131(2), the words “for the same or another chargeable period”. In section 149(1), the words “for that period” and the words “for that or any other period”. Section 170. Section 175(3). In section 176(1), the words “(but not more than six months)”. In section 178(2), paragraph (b) and the word “or” preceding it. Section 203(4). In section 231, in subsection (4) the words “and where” onwards, and subsection (5). Section 433. Section 434(4) and (5). Section 435. Section 436(3)(b). Section 507(2). In section 590(3)(d), the words “(disregarding any excess of that remuneration over the permitted maximum)”. Section 595(2) and (3). In section 596(3)(a), the word “either” and the words “or subsection (2)”. In section 600(1), the words “or have been” and the words “or has at any time been”. Section 635(4). In section 645, in subsection (3), the word “and” following paragraph (a) and subsection (5). In section 655(5), the words “in cases where the applications are made before 1st February 1990”. Section 769(7)(b) and (c). In section 824(10), the definition of “United Kingdom estate”. In Schedule 8, in paragraph 7(1), the words “, or is an associate of

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

		a person who has,”; in paragraph 13, in sub-paragraph (1) the word “fixed” and sub-paragraphs (2) and (3); and, in paragraph 14, sub-paragraph (2), in sub-paragraph (5) the words “specified in, or” and sub-paragraph (7). In Schedule 9, in paragraph 10, paragraph (ii) of sub-paragraph (c) and the word “and” preceding it. In Schedule 23, paragraph 8.
1988 c. 39.	The Finance Act 1988.	In section 68(1), the words from “at the fixed price” to “tendered”.

- 1 The repeals in sections 131 and 149 and of section 170 of the Income and Corporation Taxes Act 1988 have effect in accordance with section 42 of this Act.
- 2 The repeals in sections 231 and 824 of the Income and Corporation Taxes Act 1988 have effect in accordance with sections 110 and 111 of this Act.
- 3 The repeals in sections 433 to 435 of the Income and Corporation Taxes Act 1988 have effect in accordance with section 84(5) of this Act and the repeal of section 436(3)(b) of that Act has effect in accordance with section 87(5) of this Act.
- 4 The repeals in sections 590, 595, 596 and 600 of, and in Schedule 23 to, the Income and Corporation Taxes Act 1988 have effect in accordance with Schedule 6 to this Act.
- 5 The repeals in sections 635, 645 and 655 of the Income and Corporation Taxes Act 1988 have effect in accordance with Schedule 7 to this Act.
- 6 The repeal of section 769(7)(b) and (c) of the Income and Corporation Taxes Act 1988 has effect in accordance with section 100 of this Act.
- 7 The repeal in the Finance Act 1988 has effect in relation to offers made on or after 11th October 1988.

PART V U.K.

CLOSE COMPANIES

Modifications etc. (not altering text)

C76 Sch. 17 Pt. V restricted (*retrospectively*) by 1993 c. 34, s. 79(2)(a)

1970 c. 9.	The Taxes Management Act 1970.	Section 29(2). In section 31(3)(b), the words “426,”. In the Table in section 98,
------------	--------------------------------	---

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

		in the first column, the reference to paragraph 17 of Schedule 19 to the principal Act. In Schedule 3, in rule 8, the words from “or relating” to “Schedule 19 to the principal Act”.
1972 c. 41.	The Finance Act 1972.	In Schedule 24, paragraph 6.
1979 c. 14.	The Capital Gains Tax Act 1979.	In section 89(1), paragraph (b) and the word “or” preceding it.
1988 c. 1.	The Income and Corporation Taxes Act 1988.	In section 127(3), paragraph (b) and the word “or” preceding it. In section 230, the word “either”, the words from “or to” to “Schedule 19” and the words “in either case”. In section 239(7), the words “subsections (5) to (7) of section 430 and”. In section 249(3), the words “and paragraph 12(1) to (3) of Schedule 19”. In section 250(7), the words “and paragraph 12 of Schedule 19”. Section 414(3). In section 416(1), the words from “except” to “Schedule 19”. Sections 423 to 430. In section 539(1), the words “including tax under section 426”. In section 681, in subsection (1), paragraph (b) and the word “and” preceding it and subsections (2) and (3). Section 686(3) and (4). Section 687(3)(b) and (c). In section 701(8), the words “426(3)”. Section 742(9)(d) and (10). In section 825(1)(a), the words from “and any” to “430(7) (a)”. In Schedule 4, paragraph 10(3). In Schedule 8, in paragraph 7(3), the second “and”. Schedule 19. In Schedule 29, in the Table in paragraph 32, the entries relating to section 29(2) of the Taxes Management Act

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

		1970 and sections 89(1)(b) and 136(10)(b) of the Capital Gains Tax Act 1979.
1988 c. 39.	The Finance Act 1988.	Section 102(2)(a).

- 1 The repeal in section 98 of the Taxes Management Act 1970 and the repeal of paragraph 17 of Schedule 19 to the Income and Corporation Taxes Act 1988 have effect on and after the day on which this Act is passed.
- 2 The repeal in section 89 of the Capital Gains Tax Act 1979 (and the corresponding repeal in Schedule 29 to the Income and Corporation Taxes Act 1988) have effect where the due date of issue of the share capital issued to a close company falls in an accounting period of the company beginning after 31st March 1989.
- 3 The repeal of section 414(3) of the Income and Corporation Taxes Act 1988 has effect from 1st April 1989.
- 4 The repeal of sections 423 to 430 of, and Schedule 19 to, the Income and Corporation Taxes Act 1988 has effect in accordance with section 103 of this Act.
- 5 The repeals in section 681 of the Income and Corporation Taxes Act 1988 have effect in relation to the income of bodies corporate for accounting periods beginning after 31st March 1989.
- 6 The remaining repeals have effect in relation to accounting periods beginning after 31st March 1989.

PART VI U.K.

CAPITAL ALLOWANCES

1968 c. 3.	The Capital Allowances Act 1968.	Section 9(b). Section 14. Section 50. Section 67(11). In section 68, in subsections (1) and (3), the words “or forestry”, in each place where they occur, and in subsection (2), the words “and forestry income”. Section 80. In section 87(4), the words “or forestry”, in both places where they occur. In section 92(5), the words “allowed or” and the words “balancing allowance or”. Section 93(1) and (2). Schedule 8.
1971 c. 68.	The Finance Act 1971.	In Schedule 8, paragraph 2 and, in paragraph 7, in sub-paragraph (1) the words “Subject to sub-paragraph (2) below” and the words from

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

		“byreason of” to the end of paragraph (b) and sub-paragraph (2).
1978 c. 42.	The Finance Act 1978.	In Schedule 6, paragraph 8.
1980 c. 48.	The Finance Act 1980.	In section 74(6), the words from the beginning to “and”. In section 75(6), the words from the beginning to “and”.
1982 c. 39.	The Finance Act 1982.	In Schedule 12, paragraph 11.
1986 c. 41.	The Finance Act 1986.	Section 56(5). In Schedule 15, in paragraphs 1 to 3, the words “orforestry”, in each place where they occur, in paragraph 7(3), the words “subject to paragraph 9 below”, and in paragraph 11, the words “andforestry income” and the words “or forestry income”.
1988 c. 1.	The Income and Corporation Taxes Act 1988.	In section 521(5), the words “within the terms of section 839”.

- 1 The repeal in paragraph 7(1)(b) of Schedule 8 to the Finance Act 1971 has effect in cases where machinery or plant is brought into use on or after the day on which this Act is passed.
- 2 The repeals in sections 68 and 87(4) of the Capital Allowances Act 1968 and in paragraphs 1 to 3 and 11 of Schedule 15 to the Finance Act 1986 have effect in relation to chargeable periods beginning on or after 6th April 1993.
- 3 The repeal in section 521(5) of the Income and Corporation Taxes Act 1988 has effect in accordance with paragraph 27 of Schedule 13 to this Act.
- 4 The repeals of the provisions listed in sub-paragraph (5) of paragraph 28 of Schedule 13 to this Act have effect in accordance with that paragraph.

PART VII U.K.

CAPITAL GAINS

1973 c. 51.	The Finance Act 1973.	In section 38(3B)(a), the words “within the period of two years ending at the date of the disposal”.
1979 c. 14.	The Capital Gains Tax Act 1979.	Section 126(7)(b). Section 142A(5)(c). In Schedule 4, in paragraph 1(2), the words “at the rate of 50 per cent.”,

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

		in paragraph 3(1), the words from “by virtue” to “(settled property)”, in paragraph 3(2), the words “at the rate of 50 per cent.,” and in paragraph 4(4), the words “(taking account” onwards.
1980 c. 48.	The Finance Act 1980.	Section 79.
1981 c. 35.	The Finance Act 1981.	Section 78.Section 96(3)(e) and (4).
1982 c. 39.	The Finance Act 1982.	Sections 81 and 82.
1984 c. 43.	The Finance Act 1984.	Section 64(2)(a).
1984 c. 51.	The Inheritance Tax Act 1984.	In section 97(2), the words from “and in this section” to the end.
1985 c. 54.	The Finance Act 1985.	In section 70(10), paragraph (a) and the word “and” following it.
1986 c. 41.	The Finance Act 1986.	In section 58(2), paragraph (b) and the word “and” preceding it.Section 101(2).
1987 c. 51.	The Finance (No.2) Act 1987.	Section 78.
1988 c. 1.	The Income and Corporation Taxes Act 1988.	In Schedule 29, in the Table in paragraph 32, the entry relating to section126(7) of the Capital Gains Tax Act 1979.

- 1 The repeal in the Finance Act 1973 has effect in accordance with section130 of this Act.
- 2 The repeal in section 142A of the Capital Gains Tax Act 1979 has effect in accordance with section 92 of this Act.
- 3 The repeal of section 81 of the Finance Act 1982 has effect in relation to disposals on or after 6th April 1989 or, in the case of section 81(1)(b), assets acquired on or after that date.
- 4 The repeal of section 64(2)(a) of the Finance Act 1984 has effect in accordance with section 139(1) of this Act.
- 5 The repeal in section 97(2) of the Inheritance Tax Act 1984 has effect in accordance with section 138(7) of this Act.
- 6 The repeal in the Finance (No.2) Act 1987 has effect in accordance with section 140 of this Act.
- 7 The remaining repeals have effect in relation to disposals on or after 14th March 1989 (except that they shall not have effect in relation to such a disposal in a case

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

where the enactment in question operates in consequence of relief having been given under section 79 of the Finance Act 1980 in respect of a disposal made before that date).

PART VIII U.K.

MANAGEMENT

1970 c. 9.	The Taxes Management Act 1970.	Section 16(6). In section 20, subsections (4) and (5) and, in subsection (6), the words “and in relation” onwards. In section 20B(7), the words from “to a person” to “daughter”. Sections 37 to 39. In section 40(2), the words “Subject to section 41 below,”. Section 41. In section 53(1), the words “and the reference” onwards. In section 61(5), the words “within the said five days” and the words from “The costs” to “the collector, and”. Section 62(3), so far as unrepealed. Section 64(3), so far as unrepealed. Section 70(5). Section 86(6). Section 87(4) and (5). In section 98, in the Table, in column 1, in the entry relating to Part III of the Taxes Management Act 1970, the words “, except sections 16 and 24(2)” and the entry relating to section 481(5)(k) of the Income and Corporation Taxes Act 1988. In section 118(1), the definition of “neglect”.
1973 c. 51.	The Finance Act 1973.	In Schedule 16A, paragraph 10.
1975 c. 45.	The Finance (No. 2) Act 1975.	In section 47(1), the words “of not less than £25”.
1976 c. 24.	The Development Land Tax Act 1976.	In Schedule 8, paragraphs 17 and 18, so far as unrepealed.
1980 c. 48.	The Finance Act 1980.	Section 62.
1982 c. 39.	The Finance Act 1982.	Section 69.

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

1987 c. 51.	The Finance (No.2) Act 1987.	In section 84, subsections (1) to (3) and (5) to (8).
1988 c. 1.	The Income and Corporation Taxes Act 1988.	In section 824, in subsections (1)(a) and (b), the words “of not less than £25” and, in subsection (5), the words “of not less than £25” and paragraph (b) and the word “and” preceding it. In section 825(2), the words “of not less than £100”. In Schedule 19A, paragraph 10.
1988 c. 39.	The Finance Act 1988.	In section 126, subsection (1) and, in subsection (4)(b), the words “and(9)”. In Schedule 3, paragraph 29.
1989 c. 26.	The Finance Act 1989.	Section 165(2).

- 1 The repeals in sections 16, 53 and 98 of the Taxes Management Act 1970 have effect in accordance with section 164 of this Act.
- 2 The repeals in sections 20 and 20B of the Taxes Management Act 1970 and section 126 of the Finance Act 1988 have effect with respect to notices given, or warrants issued, on or after the day on which this Act is passed.
- 3 The repeals of sections 37 to 39, in section 40, of section 41 and in section 118 of the Taxes Management Act 1970 and in Schedule 3 to the Finance Act 1988 have effect in accordance with section 149 of this Act.
- 4 The repeals in section 61 of the Taxes Management Act 1970 come into force on the day appointed under section 152(7) of this Act.
- 5 The repeals in sections 86 and 87 of the Taxes Management Act 1970, the Finance (No.2) Act 1975, the Finance Act 1980 and sections 824 and 825 of the Income and Corporation Taxes Act 1988 have effect in accordance with section 158 of this Act.
- 6 The repeal in the Finance Act 1982 has effect in accordance with section 156(4) of this Act.
- 7 The repeal of subsection (2) of section 165 of this Act has effect in relation to failures beginning on or after the day appointed under that subsection.

PART IX U.K.

STAMP DUTY: INSURANCE

54 & 55 Vict. c. 39.	The Stamp Act 1891.	Section 91. Section 98(1). Section 100. Section 118. In Schedule 1, paragraph (3) of the heading beginning “Bond, Covenant, or Instrument of any
----------------------	---------------------	--

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

		kindwhatsoever”, the whole of the heading beginning “Insurance”, and the whole of the heading beginning “Policy of Life Insurance”.
4 & 5 Eliz. 2 c. 54.	The Finance Act 1956.	Section 38.
4 & 5 Eliz. 2 c. 11 (N.I.).	The Finance Act (Northern Ireland) 1956.	Section 6.
7 & 8 Eliz. 2 c. 58.	The Finance Act 1959.	In section 30(4), the words preceding paragraph (a) and the words following paragraph (c).
7 & 8 Eliz. 2 c. 9 (N.I.).	The Finance Act (Northern Ireland) 1959.	In section 5(4), the words preceding paragraph (a) and the words following paragraph (c).
1966 c. 18.	The Finance Act 1966.	Section 47.
1966 c. 21 (N.I.).	The Finance Act (Northern Ireland) 1966.	Section 5.
1970 c. 24.	The Finance Act 1970.	In Schedule 7, paragraphs 7(4) and 17.
1970 c. 21 (N.I.).	The Finance Act (Northern Ireland) 1970.	In Schedule 2, paragraphs 7(4) and 17.
1982 c. 39.	The Finance Act 1982.	Section 130.
1988 c. 1.	The Income and Corporation Taxes Act 1988.	In Schedule 14, in paragraph 3(4) the words from “and section 100” to the end.

These repeals have effect in accordance with section 173 of this Act.

PART X U.K.

RATES OF INTEREST

1970 c. 9.	The Taxes Management Act 1970.	Section 89.
1970 c. 24.	The Finance Act 1970.	Section 30.
1970 c. 21 (N.I.).	The Finance Act (Northern Ireland) 1970.	Section 1(1) and (2).
1973 c. 51.	The Finance Act 1973.	In Schedule 16A, in paragraph 3(4), paragraph (a) and the word “and” following it and the words “they apply”.

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

1975 c. 22.	The Oil Taxation Act 1975.	In Schedule 2, in the Table in paragraph 1, the entry relating to section 89 of the Taxes Management Act 1970.
1975 c. 45.	The Finance (No.2) Act 1975.	Section 47(2).
1980 c. 1.	The Petroleum Revenue Tax Act 1980.	Section 2(3).
1984 c. 51.	The Inheritance Tax Act 1984.	Section 233(2) and (4).
1986 c. 41.	The Finance Act 1986.	Section 92(4) and (5). In Schedule 19, paragraph 32.
1987 c. 51.	The Finance (No.2) Act 1987.	Section 89.
1988 c. 1.	The Income and Corporation Taxes Act 1988.	In section 824, subsection (1A), in subsection (2) the words “and(1A)” and in subsection (6) the words “Without prejudice to subsection(1A) above”. In section 825, subsection (2A) and in subsection (5) the words “Without prejudice to subsection (2A) above”. In Schedule 19A, in paragraph 3(4), paragraph (a) and the word “and” following it and the words “they apply”.
1988 c. 39.	The Finance Act 1988.	In Schedule 13, paragraphs 7(b) and (f) and 8.

These repeals have effect in accordance with section 178(7) of this Act.

PART XI U.K.

BROADCASTING

1981 c. 68.	The Broadcasting Act 1981.	Section 32(4A). In section 35(1)(b)(ii), the words “in the case of second category profits,”.
1982 c. 39.	The Finance Act 1982.	In section 144, subsections (1), (2), (4) and (5).

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

1984 c. 46.	The Cable and Broadcasting Act 1984.	Section 40(2). In Schedule 5, in paragraph 40, subparagraphs (7), (8) and (9).
1986 c. 41.	The Finance Act 1986.	In Schedule 22, paragraph 1, and paragraphs 4 to 8.

These repeals have effect on 1st January 1990.

PART XII U.K.

GOVERNMENT STOCK: REDEMPTION

11 and 12 Geo. 5 c. 32.	The Finance Act 1921.	Sections 50 and 51. Schedule 3.
5 and 6 Geo. 6 c. 21.	The Finance Act 1942.	In Schedule 11, in Part II, the amendments of the Finance Act 1921.
9 and 10 Geo. 6 c. 64.	The Finance Act 1946.	Section 66.
1969 c. 48.	The Post Office Act 1969.	Section 108(1)(c).
1982 c. 41.	The Stock Transfer Act 1982.	Section 4.

So far as relating to stock registered in the National Savings Stock Register these repeals have effect on the coming into force of the first regulations made by virtue of section 3(1)(bb) of the National Debt Act 1972 and so far as relating to other stock and bonds they have effect on the coming into force of the first regulations made by virtue of section 47(1)(bb) of the Finance Act 1942.

PART XIII U.K.

NATIONAL SAVINGS

1971 c. 29.	The National Savings Bank Act 1971.	Section 5(2), (5), (6) and (7). In section 26(2), paragraph (b) and the word “or” preceding it.
1982 c. 39.	The Finance Act 1982.	In Schedule 20, paragraph 4(2).

These repeals, apart from the repeal of section 5(2), (5) and (6) of the National Savings Bank Act 1971, come into force on 1st October 1989.

Status: Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation: Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

PART XIV U.K.

TITHE REDEMPTION

26 Geo. 5 & 1 Edw. 8 c. 43.	The Tithe Act 1936.	Section 2(1).In section 4(2), in paragraph (a) the words “the amount”onwards.Section 7.Part II.Section 31(7).In section 47(1), the definition of “interest date”.In section 47(4), the words “of any stock, or”.InSchedule 7, paragraph 3(a) of Part I, Part II, and paragraph 2 of Part III.
5 & 6 Geo. 6 c. 21.	The Finance Act 1942.	In Schedule 11, in Part I the entry relating to Redemption Stock and inPart II the amendment of the Tithe Act 1936.
14 & 15 Geo. 6 c. 62.	The Tithe Act 1951.	In section 8(2), the words from “which” to “Act”, and the words “and appended” onwards.
6 & 7 Eliz. 2 c. 55.	The Local Government Act 1958.	In Schedule 8, paragraph 15.
1968 c. 13.	The National Loans Act 1968.	In section 16(7), the words “Part II of the Tithe Act 1936”.Section16(9)(a).In section 22(3), the words “Part II of the Tithe Act 1936”.InSchedule 1, the entries relating to section 26 of the Tithe Act 1936.
1972 c. 65.	The National Debt Act 1972.	In section 15(1), the words “section 24 of the Tithe Act 1936”.
1979 c. 14.	The Capital Gains Tax Act 1979.	In Schedule 2, in Part II, the entry relating to securities issued underPart II of the Tithe Act 1936.

These repeals have effect from the day appointed under section 187(2)of this Act.

Status:

Point in time view as at 02/07/2002.

Changes to legislation:

Finance Act 1989 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 30 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations.